



153  
L5.

NOT TO BE  
REPRODUCED  
WITHOUT PERMISSION  
FROM STOKES

H. F. Yeatman.

Back: Coll Scho

1773

Williams,

Ames Hanson





153  
L5  
A N

A B R I D G M E N T

O F

MR. L O C K E ' s

E S S A Y

C O N C E R N I N G

H U M A N U N D E R S T A N D I N G .

---

A N E W E D I T I O N , w i t h A D D I T I O N S .

---

C A R E F U L L Y R E V I S E D a n d C O R R E C T E D .

---

E D I N B U R G H :

Printed by A. DONALDSON, and sold at his Shops  
in London and Edinburgh.

---

M. DCC. LXX.



---

TO THE MUCH ESTEEMED

MR JOHN LOCKE.

HONOURED SIR,

I SEND you this imperfect draught of your excellent *Essay concerning Human Understanding*; which, I must confess, falls as much short of the perfection, as it does of the length of the original. Nevertheless, as I lately intimated to you, (and you were pleased to think, that what I proposed in reference to this Design, would not be wholly lost Labour), I am not without Hopes, that it may in this contracted *Form*, prove in some Measure serviceable to that noble End, which you have so successfully aimed at in it, viz. *The Advancement of real and useful Knowledge*. The inducement which moved me to think of abridging it, was a Consideration purely extrinsical to the Work itself; and in Effect no other than this; that it would be better suited to the Ease and Convenience of some sort of Readers, when reduced into this narrow Compass. In order to this, I thought the *First Book*, which is employed in refuting the common Opinion of *Innate Notions* and *Ideas*, might be best spared in this Abridgment; especially, since the Reader may be convinced by what he shall find here, that such a Supposition is at least needless, in regard he may attain to all the Knowledge he has, or finds himself ca-

pable of, without the help of any such *Innate Ideas*. Besides this, I have retrenched most of the larger Explanations; and some useful Hints, and instructive Theories, I have wholly omitted; not because they are less considerable in themselves, but because they seemed not so necessary to be insisted on in this *Abridgment*, considered as a previous Instrument, and preparatory Help, to guide and conduct the Mind in its *Search after Truth and Knowledge*. I did particularly pass by that accurate Discourse, concerning the Freedom and Determination of the *Will*, contained in *Chap. 21. L. 2.* because I found it too long to be inserted here at large, and too weighty and momentous to be but slightly and imperfectly represented. This, I hope, will prove no prejudice to the *Essay* itself, since none, I presume, will think it reasonable to form a Judgment of the whole Work from this Abridgment of it: And I persuade myself, that few Readers will be content with this *Epitome*, who can conveniently furnish themselves with the *Essay* at large. However, I am apt to think, that this alone will serve to make the Way to Knowledge somewhat more plain and easy; and afford such Helps for the Improvement of Reason, as are perhaps in vain sought after in those Books, which profess to teach the *Art of Reasoning*. But nevertheless, whether you shall think fit to let it come abroad under the Disadvantages that attend it in this *Form*, I must leave you to judge. I shall only add, that I think my own Pains abundantly recompensed by the agreeable, as well as instructive Entertainment, which this nearer View, and closer Inspection into your *Essay*, afforded me:

And

# DEDICATION.

And I am not a little pleased, that it has given me this Opportunity of expressing the just Value and Esteem i have for it, as well as the Honour and Respect I have for its Author. I am,

*Honoured S I R,*

*Your very humble,*

*Oxon. Ap. 17.*  
*1695.*

*and obliged Servant,*

JOHN WYNNE.

A 3

THE

---

## THE INTRODUCTION.

1. **S**INCE it is the *Understanding* that sets man above the rest of sensible beings, and gives him all the advantage and dominion which he has over them ; it is certainly a subject, even for its nobleness, worth the enquiring into.

2. My purpose therefore is to enquire into the *Original*, *Certainty*, and *Extent* of human knowledge ; together with the grounds and degrees of *Belief*, *Opinion*, and *Assent*, which I shall do in the following method.

3. *First*, I shall enquire into the *Original* of those *Ideas* or notions, which a man observes, and is conscious to himself he has in his mind, and the *Ways* whereby the understanding comes to be furnished with them.

*Secondly*, what *Knowledge* the understanding hath by those ideas ; and the certainty, evidence, and extent of it.

*Thirdly*, I shall make some enquiry into the nature and grounds of *Faith* and *Opinion*.

4. If by this enquiry into the nature of the understanding, I can discover the powers thereof *how far* they reach, and where they fail us it may be of use to prevail with the busy mind of man to be more cautious in meddling with things exceeding its comprehension, to stop when it is at the utmost extent of its tether, and to sit down in a quiet ignorance of those things, which, upon examination, are  
found

found to be beyond the reach of our capacities. We should not then perhaps be so forward, out of an affectation of *Universal Knowledge*, to perplex ourselves with disputes about things to which our understandings are not suited, and of which we cannot frame in our minds any clear or distinct perceptions; or whereof, (as it has perhaps too often happened) we have not any notions at all: But should learn to content ourselves with what is attainable by us in this state.

5. For though the *Comprehension* of our understanding comes exceeding short of the vast extent of things; yet we shall have cause enough to magnify the bountiful *Author* of our being, for that portion and degree of knowledge he has bestowed on us so far above all the rest of the Inhabitants of this our mansion. Men have reason to be well satisfied with what God hath thought fit for them, since he has given them (as St. Peter says, *πάντα πρὸς ζωὴν καὶ εὐσεβίαν*) whatsoever is necessary for the conveniencies of *Life*, and information of *Virtue*; and has put within the reach of their discovery, the comfortable provision for this life, and the way that leads to a better. How short soever their knowledge may come of an universal or perfect comprehension of whatsoever is, it yet secures their great concernments, that they have light enough to lead them to the knowledge of their *Maker* and the sight of their own *duties*. Men may find matter sufficient to busy their heads, and employ their hands with variety, delight, and satisfaction; if they will not boldly quarrel with their own constitution, and throw away the blessings their hands are filled with, because they are not big enough



to grasp every thing. We shall not have much reason to complain of the narrowness of our minds, if we will but employ them about what may be of use to us ; for of that they are very capable : And it will be an unpardonable, as well as childish peevishness, if we undervalue the advantages of our knowledge, and neglect to improve it to the ends for which it was given us, because there are some things that are set out of the reach of it. It will be no excuse to an idle and untoward servant, who would not attend his business by candle light, to plead that he had not broad sun shine. The candle that is set up in us, shines bright enough for all our purposes. The discoveries we can make with this, ought to satisfy us. And we shall then use our understandings right, when we entertain all objects in that way and proportion, that they are suited to our faculties ; and upon those grounds they are capable of being proposed to us ; and not peremptorily or intemperately require *demonstration*, and demand *certainity*, where *probability* only is to be had, and which is sufficient to govern all our concernments. If we will disbelieve every thing, because we cannot certainly know all things ; we shall do somewhat as wisely as he who would not use his legs, but sit still and perish because he had no wings to fly.

6. When we know our own *strength* we shall the better know what to undertake with hopes of success. And when we have well surveyed the *powers* of our own minds, we shall not be inclined either to sit still, and not set our thoughts on work at all in despair of knowing any thing ; nor, on the other side, question every thing, and disclaim all knowledge, because



cause some things are not to be understood. Our *Business* here, is not to know all things, but those things which concern our conduct. If we can find out those measures whereby a *rational creature*, put into that state which man is in, in this world, may and ought to govern his opinions and actions depending thereon, we need not be troubled that some other things escape our knowledge.

7. This was that which gave the first *rise* to this *essay* concerning the understanding. For I thought that the first step towards satisfying several enquiries the mind of man was very apt to run into, was to take a survey of our *understandings*, examine our own *powers*, and see to what things they are adapted. 'Till that was done, I suspected we began at the wrong end, and in vain sought for satisfaction in a quiet and secure possession of truths that most concerned us, whilst we let loose our thoughts in the vast *ocean* of being, as if all that boundless extent were the natural and undoubted possessions of our understandings; wherein there was nothing exempt from its decisions, or that escaped its comprehension. Thus men, extending their enquiries beyond their capacities, and letting their thoughts wander into those depths where they can find no sure footing, it is no wonder that they raise *questions* and multiply *disputes*, which, never coming to any clear resolution, are proper only to continue and increase their doubts, and to confirm them at last in perfect *scepticism*. Whereas were the capacities of our understandings well considered, the extent of our knowledge once discovered, and the *horizon* found, which sets bounds between the enlightened and dark parts of things, be-  
tween

tween what is, and what is not comprehensible by us, men would perhaps with less scruple acquiesce in the avowing ignorance of the *one*, and employ their thoughts and discourse, with more advantage and satisfaction, in the *other*.

N. B. Several IMPROVEMENTS are made to this Edition, which the Reader will observe are marked (thus ') with an inverted comma.



---

# AN ABRIDGMENT

OF

## LOCKE'S ESSAY.

---

### BOOK II.

---

#### CHAP. I.

*Of Ideas in General, and their Original.*

##### § 1.

**B**<sup>Y</sup> the term *idea*, I mean *whatever is the object of the understanding, when a man thinks*; or whatever it is which the mind can be employed about in thinking.

§ 2. I presume it will be easily granted me, that there are such *ideas* in mens minds: Every one is conscious of them in himself; and mens words and actions will satisfy him that they are in others. Our *first inquiry* then shall be, how they come into the mind.

§ 3. It is an established opinion among some men, that there are in the understanding certain *innate principles*, some primary notions, (*κοιναι έννοιαι*) *characters*, as it were stampt upon the mind of man, which the soul receives in its very first being, and brings into the world with it.

§ 4. This opinion is accurately discussed, and refuted in the *first book* of this *essay*, to which I shall refer the reader, that desires satisfaction in this particular.

§ 5. It

§ 5. It shall be sufficient here to show, how men, barely by the use of their *natural faculties*, may attain to all the knowledge they have, without the help of any *innate* impressions; and may arrive at certainty without any such original notions or principles. For I imagine, any one will easily grant, that it would be impertinent to suppose the *ideas* of *colours* innate in a creature to whom God hath given *sight*, and a power to receive them by the eyes from external objects. I shall shew by what ways and degrees all other *ideas* come into the mind; for which I shall appeal to every one's own experience and observation.

§ 6. Let us then suppose the mind to be, as we say, *white paper*, void of all characters, without any *ideas*: How comes it to be furnished? whence has it all the materials of reason and knowledge? To this I answer, in one word, from *experience* and *observation*. This, *when employed about external sensible objects*, we may call *sensation*: By this we have the *ideas* of *bitter*, *sweet*, *yellow*, *hard*, &c. which are commonly called *sensible qualities*, because conveyed into the mind by the *senses*. The same *experience*, *when employed about the internal operations of the mind*, *perceived*, and *reflected on by us*, we may call *Reflection*. Hence we have the *ideas* of *perception*, *thinking*, *doubting*, *willing*, *reasoning*, &c.

§ 7. These two, *viz. external material things*, as the objects of sensation; and the *operations of our own mind*, as the objects of reflection, are to me the only *originals* from whence all our *ideas* take their beginnings. The understanding seems not to have the least glimmering of *ideas*, which it doth not receive from one of these two *sources*. These, when

we have taken a full survey of them, and their several *modes* and compositions, we shall find to contain our whole stock of *ideas*; and that we have nothing in our minds which did not come in one of these two ways.

§ 8. ' He that attentively considers the state of a  
' child, at his first coming into the world, will have  
' little reason to think him stored with plenty of ideas,  
' that are to be the matter of his future knowledge.  
' 'Tis by degrees children come to be furnished with  
' them from the objects they are conversant with.  
They are so surrounded with bodies that perpetually and diversely affect them, that some *ideas* will (whether they will or no) be imprinted on their minds. *Light* and *colours*, *sounds* and *tangible* qualities, do continually sollicit their proper *senses*, and force an entrance into the mind. 'Tis late commonly before *children* come to have *ideas* of the operation of their minds; and some men have not any very clear or perfect *ideas* of the greatest part of them all their lives. Because, though they pass there continually; yet, like floating visions, they make not impressions deep enough to leave in the mind clear and lasting *ideas*, till the understanding turns inward upon itself, and *reflects* on its own operations, and makes them the objects of its own contemplation.

§ 9. When a man *first perceives*, then he may be said to *have ideas*; having *ideas*, and perception, signifying the same thing. It is an opinion maintained by some, that the *soul always thinks*. and that it always has the actual perception of *ideas* as long as it exists: And that *actual thinking* is as inseparable from the soul, as *actual extension* is from the body. But whether the soul be supposed to exist antecedent,

‘ to, or coeval with, or some time after the first rudiments or organization, or the beginnings of life in the body, I leave to be disputed by those, who have better thought of that matter. I confess myself to have one of those dull souls, that doth not perceive itself always to contemplate *ideas* :’ Nor can conceive it any more necessary for the soul always to *think*, than for the body always to *move* : The perception of *ideas* being (as I conceive) to the soul, what motion is to the body, not its *essence*, but one of its *operations* : And therefore, though thinking be never so much the proper action of the soul, yet it is not necessary to suppose, that it should always think, always be in action. That perhaps is the privilege of the infinite *author* and preserver of all things, *who never slumbers nor sleeps* ; but is not competent to any *finite* being. We know certainly by experience, that we sometimes think ; and thence draw this infallible consequence, that there is something in us that has a power to think, but whether that substance perpetually thinks or no, we can be no farther assured than experience informs us.

§ 10. I would be glad to learn from those men, who so confidently pronounce, that the human soul always thinks, how they come to know it : Nay, how they come to know that they themselves think, when they themselves do not perceive it. ‘ Can a man think, and *not be conscious of it* ? If they say, the man thinks always, but is not always conscious of it ; they may as well say his body is extended without having parts. For ’tis altogether as intelligible to say, that a body is extended without parts, as that any thing *thinks without being conscious of it*, or perceiving that it does

‘ so.



‘ so They who talk thus, may, with as much reason,  
 ‘ if it be necessary to their hypothesis, say, that a man  
 ‘ is always hungry, but that he does not always feel  
 ‘ it : Whereas, hunger consists in that very sensation,  
 ‘ as thinking consists in being conscious that one  
 ‘ thinks.’

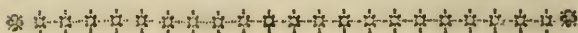
§ 11. The most that can be said of it, is, that  
 ‘tis possible the soul may always think ; *but not al-*  
*ways retain it in memory* : And, I say, it is as pos-  
 sible the soul may not always think ; and much more  
 probable that it should sometimes not think, than  
 that it should often think, and that a long while to-  
 gether, and not be conscious to itself the next mo-  
 ment after that it had thought. ‘ And it is hardly  
 ‘ to be conceived, that our infinitely wise Creator,  
 ‘ should make so admirable a faculty, as the power  
 ‘ of thinking, to be so idly and uselessly employ’d,  
 ‘ at least one fourth part of its time here, as to think  
 ‘ constantly, without remembering any one of those  
 ‘ thoughts whatever.’

§ 12. I see no reason therefore to believe, that  
*the soul thinks before the senses have furnished it with*  
*ideas to think on* ; and as those are increased and re-  
 tained, so it comes by exercise to improve its faculty  
 of thinking. in the several parts of it ; as well as af-  
 terwards by *compounding those ideas*, and *reflecting* on  
 its own operations, it increases its *stock*, as well as fa-  
 cility in remembering, imagining, reasoning, and other  
*modes* of thinking.

§ 13. ‘ If it shall be demanded then, *when a man*  
 ‘ *begins to have any ideas* ? I think the true answer  
 ‘ is, when he first has any *sensation*. For since there  
 ‘ appear not to be any ideas in the mind, before the

‘ senses have conveyed any in, I conceive that ideas  
 ‘ in the understanding are coeval with *sensation*,  
 ‘ which is *such an impression or motion made in some*  
 ‘ *part of the body, as produces some perception in the*  
 ‘ *understanding.*

‘ § 14. In this part the *understanding* is merely  
 ‘ *passive*; and whether or no it will have these be-  
 ‘ ginnings, and as it were materials of knowledge,  
 ‘ is not in it’s own power. For the objects of our  
 ‘ senses do, many of them, obtrude their particular  
 ‘ ideas upon our minds whether we will or no; and  
 ‘ the operations of our minds will not let us be  
 ‘ without, at least some obscure notions of them.’



## C H A P. II.

### *Of Simple Ideas.*

#### § 1.

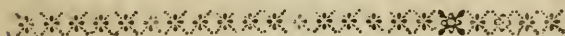
OF ideas some are *simple*, others *complex*. A  
*simple idea*, is *one uniform appearance* or con-  
 ception in the mind, which is not distinguishable in-  
 to different *ideas*. Such are the *ideas* of *sensible qua-*  
*lities*, which though they are in the things themselves  
 so united and blended, that there is no separation, no  
 distance between them; yet the ideas they produce  
 in the mind, enter by the senses simple and unmixed.  
 Thus, though the hand feels *softness* and *warmth* in the  
 same piece of wax; yet the *simple ideas*. thus united  
 in the same subject, are as perfectly *distinct* as those  
 that come in by different senses.

§ 2. These *simple ideas* are suggested no other way  
 than



than from the two ways above-mentioned, *viz. sensation and reflection*

§ 3. The mind being once stored with the *simple ideas*, has the power to repeat, compare, and unite them to an infinite variety: And so can make at pleasure new *complex ideas*. But the most enlarged understanding cannot *frame one new simple idea*; nor by any force destroy them that are there.



### C H A P. III.

#### *Of Ideas of one Sense.*

##### § 1.

**I**DEAS, with reference to the different ways wherein they approach the mind, are of *four sorts*.

*First*, There are some which come into our minds by *one sense only*

*Secondly*, There are others conveyed into the mind by *more senses than one*.

*Thirdly*, Others that are had from *reflection only*.

*Fourthly*, There are some suggested to the mind by all the ways of *sensation and reflection*.

§ 2. *First*, Some enter into the mind only by one sense peculiarly adapted to receive them. Thus *colours, sounds, smells, &c* come in only by the *eyes, ears, and nose*. And if these organs are any of them so disordered as not to perform their functions, they have no postern to be admitted by; no other way to bring themselves in view, and be perceived by the understanding. It will be needless to enumerate all the particular *simple ideas* belonging to each *sense*; nor indeed is it possible; there being a great many more than we have *names* for.



## C H A P. IV.

*Of Solidity.*

## § 1.

I SHALL here mention one which we receive by our touch, because it is one of the chief ingredients in many of our complex ideas; and that is the idea of *solidity*: It arises from the *resistance*, one body makes to the entrance of another body into the place it possesses, till it has left it. There is no idea which we more constantly receive from *sensation* than this. In whatever posture we are, we feel somewhat that supports us, and hinders us from sinking downwards: And the bodies we daily handle, make us perceive, that while they remain between them, they do, by an unsurmountable force, hinder the approach of the parts of our hands that press them. This idea is commonly called *impenetrability*. I conceive *solidity* is more proper to express it, because this carries something more of *positive* in it than *impenetrability*, which is *negative*, and is perhaps more a consequence of *solidity*, than *solidity* itself. This seems to be the most *essential* property of body and that whereby we conceive it to fill space: The idea of which is, that where we imagine any space taken up by a solid substance, we conceive it so to possess it, that it excludes all other solid substances. This resistance is so great, that no force can surmount it. All the bodies in the world pressing a drop of water on all sides, will never be able to overcome the resistance  
it

it makes to their approaching one another, till it be removed out of their way.

§ 2. *The idea of solidity is distinguished from that of pure space*, in as much as this latter is neither capable of resistance, nor motion: 'Tis distinguished from *hardness*, in as much as hardness is a firm cohesion of the solid parts of matter making up masses of a sensible bulk, so that the whole doth not easily change its figure. Indeed *hard* and *soft*, as commonly apprehended by us, are but *relative* to the constitutions of our bodies: That being called *hard* which will put us to pain sooner than change its figure, by the pressure of any part of our bodies; and that *soft*, which changes the situation of its parts upon an easy and unpainful touch.

§ 3. This difficulty of changing situation amongst the parts, gives no more *solidity* to the hardest body, than to the softest; nor is an *adamant* one jot more solid than *water*: He that shall fill a yielding soft body well with *air* or *water*, will quickly find its resistance. By this way we may distinguish the idea of the extension of *body*, from the idea of the extension of *space*: That of *body*, is the cohesion or continuity of solid, separable, and moveable parts; that of *space*, the continuity of unsolid, inseparable, and immoveable parts. *Upon the solidity of bodies depends their mutual impulse, resistance, and pretrusion.* Of *pure space* and *solidity* there are several (among which I confess myself one) who persuade themselves they have clear and distinct ideas: And that they can think on *space* without any thing in it that resists, or is protruded by body, as well as on something *that fills space*, that can be protruded by the impulse

impulse of other bodies, or resist their motion; the idea of the distance between the opposite parts of a concave surface, being equally clear without, as with the idea of any solid parts between. If any one ask *what this solidity is*, I send him to his senses to inform him: Let him put a *flint* or *foot ball* between his hands, and then endeavour to join them, and he will know.

+++++

## C H A P. V.

### *Of Simple Ideas of divers Senses.*

SOME ideas we get into the mind by *more than one* sense, as *space*, *extension*, *figure*. *rest* and *motion*. These are perceivable by the eyes and touch.

+++++

## C H A P. VI.

### *Of Simple Ideas of Reflection.*

SOME are had from *reflection*, only: Such are the ideas we have of the *operations* of our minds: Of which the two principal are *perception* or *thinking*; and *volition* or *willing*. The powers of producing these operations are called *faculties*, which are the *understanding* and *will*, the several *modes* of thinking, &c. belong to this head.

C H A P.

\*\*\*\*\*

## C H A P. VII.

*Of simple Ideas of Sensation and Reflection.*

## § 1.

**T**HERE are some simple ideas conveyed into the mind by all the ways of *sensation* and *reflection*; such are *pleasure*, *pain*, *power*, *existence*, *unity*, *succession*. Pleasure or delight, pain or uneasiness accompany almost every impression on our senses, and every action or thought of the *mind*. By *pleasure* or *pain* we mean whatever delights or molests us, whether it arises from the thoughts of our minds; or any thing operating on our bodies. Satisfaction, delight, pleasure, happiness, and uneasiness, trouble, torment, misery, &c. are but different degrees, the one of pleasure, the other of pain.

§ 2. The author of our beings having given us a power over several parts of our bodies to move or keep them at rest as we think fit; and also by their motion to move ourselves and other contiguous bodies; having also given a power to our minds in several instances, to chuse amongst its ideas which it will think on: To excite us to these actions or *thinking* and *motion* he has joined to several thoughts and sensations a perception of *delight*: Without this we should have no reason to prefer one thought or action to another, or motion to rest. In which state, man, however furnished with the faculties of understanding and will, would be a very idle unactive creature, and pass his time only in a lazy lethargic dream.

## § 3.

§ 3. *Pain* has the same efficacy to set us on work that pleasure has; since we are as ready to avoid that, as to pursue this. This is worth our consideration, that *pain is often produced by the same objects and ideas that produce pleasure* in us. This their near conjunction gives us new occasion of admiring the wisdom and goodness of our *Maker*, who designing the preservation of our being, has annexed pain to the application of many things to our bodies, to warn us of the harm they will do us, and as advices to withdraw us from them. But he not designing our preservation barely, but the preservation of every part and organ in its perfection, hath in many cases annexed pain to those very ideas which delight us. Thus *heat* that is very agreeable to us in one degree, by a little greater increase of it, 'proves no ordinary torment: Which is wisely ordered by *nature*, that when any object does by the vehemence of its operation disorder the instruments of sensation, whose structures cannot but be very delicate, we might by the pain be warned to withdraw before the organ be quite put out of order. That this is the *end of pain*, appears from this consideration; that though great light is insufferable to the eyes; yet the highest degree of *darkness* does not at all displease them: Because *that* causes no disorderly motion in that curious organ the eye. But excess of *cold* as well as *heat* pains us; because it is equally destructive to the temper which is necessary to the preservation of life.

§ 4. Another reason why God hath annexed *several degrees of pleasure and pain to all the things that environ and affect us*, and blended them together in  
all



all things that our thoughts and senses have to do with, is, that we finding imperfection and dissatisfaction, and want of compleat happiness in all the enjoyments of the creatures, might be led to seek it in the enjoyment of him *with whom is fulness of joy, and at whose right hand are pleasures for evermore*. Though what is here said concerning *pleasure* and *pain* may not perhaps make those ideas clearer to us, than our own experience does, yet it may serve to give us due sentiments of the wisdom and goodness of the *sovereign* disposer of all things, which is not unsuitable to the main end of these enquiries: The knowledge and veneration of him being the *chief end* of all our thoughts, and the proper business of all understandings.

§ 5. *Existence* and *unity* are two other ideas suggested by every object without, and every idea within: When ideas are in our minds, we consider them as being actually there, as well as we consider things to be actually without us; which is, that they *exist*, or have existence: And whatever we consider as *one thing*, whether a *real being* or *idea*, suggests the idea of *unity*.

§ 6. Power is another idea derived from these sources: For finding in ourselves that we can *think* and *move* several parts of our bodies at pleasure; and observing the *effects* that natural bodies produce in one another: By both these ways we get the idea of *power*.

§ 7. *Succession* is another idea suggested by our senses, and by reflection on what passes in our minds. For if we look into ourselves, we shall find our *ideas* always whilst we are awake, or have any thought,  
passing

passing in train, one going and another coming without intermission.



# C H A P. VIII.

*Some farther considerations concerning simple ideas.*

## § 1.

**W**HATSOEVER is able by affecting our senses to cause any perception in the mind, doth thereby produce in the understanding a *simple idea*; which, whatsoever be the cause of it, is looked upon as a *real positive idea* in the understanding. Thus the ideas of *heat* and *cold*, *light* and *darkness*, *motion* and *rest*, &c. are equally positive in the mind, though some of their causes may be mere *privations*. An inquiry into their causes concerns not the ideas as in the understanding; but the nature of the things existing without us. Thus a *painter* has distinct ideas of white and black, as well as the philosopher, who tells us what kind of particles, and how ranged in the surface, occasioned those colours.

§ 2. That a *privative cause* may produce a *positive idea*, appears from shadows; which (though nothing but the absence of light) are discernible; and cause clear and positive ideas. The natural reason of which may be this, viz. that since sensation is produced only by different degrees and modes of motion in our animal spirits, variously agitated by external objects; the abatement of any former motion must as necessarily produce a new sensation as the increase and variation of it; and thereby introduce a new idea. We,



have indeed some *negative* names which stand not directly for positive ideas, but for their absence; such as *insipid*, *silence*, which denote positive ideas. viz. *taste* and *sound*, with a signification of their absence

§ 3. It will be useful to distinguish *ideas as they are perceptions in our minds*, from what *they are in the bodies*, that cause such perceptions in us: For we are not to think the former exact images and resemblances of something inherent in the subject, most of those of *sensation* being in the mind, no more the likenesses of something existing without us, than the names that stand for them are the likenesses of our ideas. which yet upon hearing, they are apt to excite in us

§ 4. Whatsoever the *mind perceive in itself* or is the immediate object of perception, thought or understanding, that I call an *idea*: And the power to produce any idea in our mind, I call the *quality of the subject* wherein that power is: Thus a *snow ball* having the power to produce in us the ideas of *white*, *cold*, and *round*, those *powers* as they are in the snow-ball, I call *qualities*; and as they are *sensations or perceptions* in our understandings, I call them *ideas*: Which ideas if I speak of sometimes, as in the things themselves, I would be understood to mean those *qualities* in the objects which produce them in us.

§ 5. These *qualities* are of *two sorts*, first, *original*, or primary, such are *solidity*, *extension*, *motion* or *rest*, *number* and *figure*. These are inseparable from body, and such as it constantly keeps in all its changes and alterations: Thus take a grain of *wheat*, divide it into two parts, each part has still *solidity*, *extension*, *figure*, *mobility*: Divide it again, and it still retains the same qualities, and will do still, though

you divide it on till the parts become insensible. Secondly, *secondary qualities*, such as *colours, smells tastes, sounds, &c* which, whatever reality we by mistake may attribute to them, are in truth nothing in the objects themselves, but *powers to produce various sensations in us*; and depend on the qualities before-mentioned.

§ 6. ‘ The next thing to be considered is, how  
 ‘ *bodies* produce *ideas* in us, and that is manifestly by  
 ‘ *impulse*, the only way which we can conceive bodies  
 ‘ operate in. If then external objects be not united  
 ‘ to our minds, when they produce *ideas* in it; and  
 ‘ yet we perceive *these original qualities* in such of them  
 ‘ as singly fall under our senses, it is evident, that  
 ‘ some motion must be thence continued by our nerves,  
 ‘ or animal spirits, by some parts of our bodies, to the  
 ‘ brain, or the seat of sensation, there to *produce in*  
 ‘ *our minds the particular ideas we have of them.*’

§ 7. ‘ After the same manner that the *ideas* of these  
 ‘ *original qualities* are produced in us, we may conceive, that the *ideas of secondary qualities* are also  
 ‘ *produced, viz by the operation of insensible particles on*  
 ‘ *our senses.* For it being manifest that there is good  
 ‘ store of bodies, each whereof is so small, that we  
 ‘ cannot, by any of our senses, discover either their  
 ‘ bulk, figure, or motion; we may suppose, that the  
 ‘ different motions and figures, bulk and number of  
 ‘ such particles, affecting the several organs of our  
 ‘ senses, produce in us those different sensations, which  
 ‘ we have from these bodies. It being no more im-  
 ‘ possible to conceive, that God should annex such i-  
 ‘ deas to such motions, with which they have no simi-  
 ‘ litude, than that he should annex the idea of pain  
 ‘ to

' to the motion of a piece of steel dividing our flesh,  
' with which that idea hath no resemblance.'

§ 8. The *ideas* of *primary* qualities of bodies are *resemblances of them*; and their patterns really exist in bodies themselves: But the ideas produced in us by *secondary* qualities, *have no resemblance of them at all*: And what is *sweet, blue, or warm* in the idea, is but the certain bulk, figure, and motion of the insensible parts in the bodies themselves, which we call so.

§ 9. Thus we see that fire at one distance produces in us the sensation of *warmth*, which at a nearer approach causes the sensation of *pain*. Now what reason have we to say that the idea of *warmth* is actually in the fire, but that of *pain* not in the fire, which the same fire produces in us the same way? The bulk, number, figure and motion of the parts of fire, are really in it, whether we perceive them or no; and therefore may be called *real* qualities, because they really exist in that body. But *light and heat are no more really in it, than sickness or pain*: Take away the sensation of them; let not the eyes see light or colours, nor the ear hear sounds; let the palate not taste, nor the nose smell, and all *colours, tastes, odours, and sounds*, as they are such particular ideas vanish and cease, and are reduced to their causes (that is) bulk, motion, figure, &c. of parts.

§ 10. These *secondary* qualities are of two sorts, first *immediately perceivable*, which by immediately operating on our bodies, produce several different ideas in us. Secondly, *mediately perceivable*, which by operating on other bodies, change their primary qualities, so as

to render them capable of producing ideas in us different from what they did before. These last are powers in bodies which proceed from the particular constitution of those primary and original qualities, to make such a change in the *bulk, figure, texture, &c.* of another body, as to make it operate on our senses different from what it did before; as in fire to make lead fluid: These two last being nothing but powers relating to other bodies, and resulting from the different modifications of the original qualities, are yet otherwise thought of; *the former being esteemed real qualities; but the latter barely powers*: The reason of this mistake seems to be this; that our ideas of sensible qualities containing nothing in them of bulk, figure, &c. we cannot think them the effect of those primary qualities which appear not to our senses to operate in their productions, and with which they have not any apparent congruity, or conceivable connexion: Nor can reason show how bodies by their bulk, figure, &c. should produce in the mind the ideas of *warm, yellow, &c.*; but, in the other case, when bodies operate upon one another, we plainly see that the quality produced hath commonly no resemblance with any thing in the thing producing it, and therefore we look upon it as the effect of power: But our senses not being able to discover any unlikeness between the idea produced in us, and the quality of the object producing it, we imagine that our ideas are resemblances of something in the objects, and not the effects of certain powers placed in the modification of the primary qualities, with which primary qualities the ideas produced in us have no resemblance.

§ 11. This

§ 11. This little excursion into natural philosophy was necessary in our present enquiry to distinguish the *primary* and real qualities of bodies which are always in them, from those *secondary* and imputed qualities, which are but the powers of several combinations of those primary ones, when they operate without being distinctly discerned; whereby we learn to know what ideas are, and what are not resemblances of something really existing in the bodies we denominate from them.

\*\*\*\*\*

## CHAP. IX.

### *Of Perception.*

#### § 1.

PERCEPTION is the first we receive from reflection: It is by some called *thinking* in general: Though *thinking*, in the propriety of the *English* tongue, signifies that sort of operation of the mind about its ideas, wherein the mind is active; where it considers any thing with some degree of voluntary attention: For in bare *perception* the mind is for the most part only *passive*; and what it perceives it cannot avoid perceiving. What this is, we cannot otherwise know, than by reflecting on what passes in our minds when we *see, feel, hear, &c.*

§ 2. Impressions made on the outward parts, if they are not taken notice of within, cause no *perception*: As we see in those whose minds are intently busied in the contemplation of certain objects. A sufficient impulse there may be upon the organs of

sensation : But if it reach not the observation of the mind, there follows no perception : So that *wherever there is sense or perception, there some idea is actually produced and present in the understanding.*

§ 3. We may observe that the ideas *we receive from sensation, are often in grown people altered by the judgment*, without our taking notice of it. Thus a globe of any uniform colour (as of gold or jet, being set before our eyes, the idea thereby imprinted is of a flat circle variously shadowed. But being accustomed to perceive what kind of appearances convex bodies are wont to make in us ; the judgment alters the appearances into their causes ; and from that variety of shadow or colour, frames to itself the perception of a convex figure of one uniform colour. ‘ To which purpose I shall here insert a problem of the learned and worthy Mr. Molineux, and it is this :’ “ Suppose a man born  
 “ blind, and now adult, and taught by his touch  
 “ to distinguish between a cube and a sphere of the  
 “ same metal, and nighly of the same bigness, so as  
 “ to tell, when he felt the one and the other, which  
 “ is the cube, which the sphere. Suppose then the  
 “ cube and sphere placed on a table, and the blind  
 “ man to be made to see : Quere, whether by his  
 “ sight, before he touched them, he could now  
 “ distinguish and tell, which is the globe, which  
 “ the cube.” To which the acute and judicious proposer answers, Not.” “ For though he has obtained the experience of, how a globe, how a cube affects his touch ; yet he has not yet attained the  
 “ experience, that what affects his touch so or so,  
 “ must affect his sight so or so : Or that a protuberant  
 “ angle



“ angle in the cube, that pressed his hand unequally,  
“ shall appear to his eye, as it does in the cube.”  
‘ I intirely agree with this thinking gentleman in his  
‘ answer to this his problem.

§ 4. This in many cases by a settled habit is performed so readily, that we take that for the perception of our sensation, which is but an idea formed by the judgment: So that one serves only to excite the other, and is scarce taken notice of itself. As a man who reads or hears with attention, takes little notice of the characters or sounds, but of the ideas that are excited in him by them. Thus habits come at last to produce actions in us, which often escape our observation.

§ 5. The faculty of *perception* seems to be that *which puts the distinction between the animal kingdom and the inferior parts of nature*: Since vegetables many of them have some degrees of motion, and upon the different application of other bodies to them, do very briskly alter their figures and motions, and thence have obtained the name of *sensitive plants*: which yet is, I suppose, but bare *mechanism*, and no otherways produced, than the shortning of a rope by the affusion of water. But *perception*, I believe, is in *some degree in all sorts of animals*: Though I think we may from the make of an *Oyster* or *Cockle*, reasonably conclude that it has not so many nor so quick senses as a man, or several other animals.

§ 6. Perception is also the first step and degree towards knowledge, and the inlet of all the materials of it: So that the fewer senses any man has, and the duller the impressions that are made by them are, the  
more

more remote he is from that knowledge which is to be found in other men.

+++++

## C H A P. X.

### *Of Retention.*

#### § 1.

**T**HE next faculty of the mind whereby it makes a farther progress towards knowledge, I call *Retention*; which is the keeping of those ideas it has received: Which is done two ways.

§ 2. First, *By keeping the idea which is brought into the mind for some time actually in view*, which is called *Contemplation*.

§ 3. Secondly, *By reviving those ideas in our minds which have disappeared*, and have been, as it were, laid out of sight: And this is *memory*, which is as it were the storehouse of our ideas; for the narrow mind of man not being capable of having many ideas under view at once, it was necessary to have a repository to lay up those ideas which at another time it may have use for. But our *ideas* being nothing but actual perceptions in the mind, which cease to be any thing when there is no perception of them, this laying up of our *ideas* in the repository of the memory signifies no more but this, *that the mind has a power in many cases to revive perceptions it has once had, with this additional perception annexed to them, that it has had them before*. And it is by the assistance of this faculty, that we are said to have all those ideas in our understandings, which we  
can



can bring in sight, and make the objects of our thoughts, without the help of those sensible qualities which first imprinted them there.

§ 4. *Attention and repetition help much to the fixing ideas in our memories* : But those which make the deepest and most lasting impressions, are those which are accompanied with *pleasure or pain*. *Ideas* but once taken in, and never again repeated, are soon lost ; as those of colours in such as lost their sight when very young.

§ 5. The memory in some men is tenacious, even to a miracle : But yet there seems to be a constant decay of all our *ideas*, even of those which are struck deepest ; and in minds the most retentive : So that if they be not sometimes renewed, the print wears out, and at last there remains nothing to be seen. Those *ideas* that are often refreshed by a frequent return of the objects or actions that produce them, *fix themselves best in the memory, and remain longest there* : Such are the *original qualities of bodies*, viz. Solidity, Extension, Figure, Motion, &c. and *those that almost constantly affect us*, as heat and cold : And those that are the *affections of all kinds of beings*, as Existence, Duration, Number : These and the like are seldom quite lost while the mind retains any *ideas* at all.

§ 6. In memory *the mind is oftentimes more than barely passive* ; for it often sets itself on work to search some hidden *ideas* : Sometimes they start of their own accord ; and sometimes turbulent and tempestuous passions tumble them out of their cells.

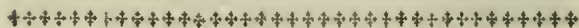
§ 7. The defects of the memory are *two*.

*First,*

*First*, That it loses the *idea* quite, and so far it produces perfect *ignorance*.

*Secondly*, That it moves slowly, and *retrieves not* the ideas laid up in store quick enough to serve the mind upon occasions. This, if it be to a great degree, is *stupidity*. In the having ideas ready at hand on all occasions, consists what we call *Invention*, *Fancy* and *quickness of parts*.

§ 8. This faculty other animals seem to have to a great degree, as well as *Man*, as appears by birds learning of tunes, and their endeavour to hit the notes right. For it seems impossible that they should endeavour to conform their voices (as 'tis plain they do) to notes whereof they have no *ideas*.



## CHAP. XI.

*Of Discerning, and other operations of the mind.*

### § 1.

**A**NOTHER faculty of the mind is, that of *discerning between its ideas*: On this depends the evidence, and certainty of several even general propositions, which pass for *innate truths*: Whereas indeed they depend on this clear discerning faculty of the mind, whereby it perceives two *ideas* to be the same or different. In being able nicely to distinguish one thing from another, where there is the least difference, consists in a great measure that *exactness of judgment* and *clearness of reason*, which is to be observed in one man above another; which is quite opposite to *wit*, which consists most in the assemblage of *ideas*,  
and

and putting those together with quickness and variety, which have the least resemblance, to form agreeable visions : Whereas judgment separates carefully those ideas, wherein can be found the least difference to prevent error and delusion.

§ 2. To the well distinguishing our *ideas*, it chiefly contributes that they be *clear and determinate* ; and when they are so, *it will not breed any confusion* or mistake about them, though the senses should convey them from the same object differently on different occasions.

§ 3. The *comparing* of our *ideas* one with another in respect of *Extent, Degree, Time, Place*, or any other circumstances, is another operation of the mind about its *ideas*, which is the ground of *Relations*. Brutes seem not to have this faculty in any great degree. They have probably several *ideas* distinct enough ; but cannot compare them farther than some sensible circumstances annexed to the objects themselves. The power of comparing general *ideas* which we may observe in Men, we may probably conjecture *Beasts* have none at all.

§ 4. *Composition* is another operation of the mind, whereby it combines several of its simple *ideas* into *complex* ones : Under which operation we may reckon that of *Enlarging*, wherein we put several *ideas* together of the same kind, as several units to make a dozen. In this also I suppose brutes come far short of Man, for though they take in and retain together several combinations of simple *ideas*, as possibly a dog does the *shape, smell, and voice* of his Master ; yet these are rather so many distinct marks, whereby he

*then* knows him, that one *complex idea* made out of those several simple ones.

§ 5. ' When children have, by repeated sensations, got *ideas* fixed in their memories, they begin, by degrees, to learn the use of signs: And when they have got the skill to apply the organs of speech to the framing of articulate sounds, they begin to make *use of words* to signify their *ideas* to others.'

§ 6. *Abstraction* is another operation of the mind, whereby the mind forms general *ideas* from such as it received from particular objects, which it does by considering them as they are in the mind such appearances, separate from the circumstances of real existence, as *Time*, *Place*, &c. These become general *representatives* of all of the same kind, and their names applicable to whatever exists conformable to such abstract *ideas*. Thus the colour which I receive from *Chalk*, *Snow*, and *Milk*, is made a representative of all of that kind; and has a name given it (*Whiteness*) which signifies the same quality, wherever to be found or imagined. ' Again, the general *idea* of a *triangle*, must be *neither oblique, nor rectangle, neither equilateral, equicrural, nor scalensn*; but all and none of these at once. In effect, it is something imperfect, that cannot exist; an *idea* wherein some parts of several different and inconsistent *ideas* are put together.\* And thus *Universals*, both *ideas* and *terms*, are made.

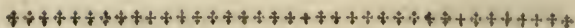
§ 7. This puts the great difference between Man and Brutes: They seem to reason about particular objects, and *ideas*, but there appear no footsteps of

*2b.*

*Abstraction* in them, or of making *general ideas*.

' And therefore, I think, we may suppose, that  
' it is in this, that the species of Brutes are dis-  
' criminated from Man; and it is that proper dif-  
' ference wherein they are wholly separated, and  
' which at last widens to so vast a distance. For if  
' they have any *ideas* at all, and are not bare ma-  
' chines (as some would have them) we cannot deny  
' them to have some reason. It seems as evident to  
' me, that they do some of them in certain instances  
' reason, as that they have sense; but it is only in  
' particular *ideas*, just as they received them from  
' their senses.

§ 8. ' How far *idiots* are concerned in the want  
' or weakness of any, or all of the foregoing facul-  
' ties, an exact observation of their several ways of  
' faltering would no doubt discover. The defect  
' in *idiots* seems to proceed from want of quickness,  
' activity, and motion in the intellectual faculties,  
' whereby they are deprived of reason: Whereas  
' *madmen*, on the other side, seem to suffer by the  
' other extreme. For they do not appear to me to  
' have lost the faculty of reasoning; but having  
' joined together some *ideas* very wrongly, they mis-  
' take them for truths; and they err as men do that  
' argue right from wrong principles. In short, herein  
' seems to lie the difference between *idiots* and *mad-*  
' *men*, that *madmen* put wrong *ideas* together, and  
' so make wrong propositions, but argue and reason  
' right from them: But *idiots* make very few or no  
' propositions, and reason scarce at all.'



## C H A P. XII.

*Of Complex Ideas.*

## § 1.

**I**N the reception of simple ideas the mind is only *passive*, having no power to frame any one to itself, nor have any idea which does not wholly consist of them. But about these simple ideas it exerts several acts of its own, whereby out of them, as the materials and foundations of the rest, the other are framed: The acts of the mind, wherein it exerts its power over its simple ideas, are chiefly these three: First, it combines several simple ideas into one compound one, and thus all *complex ideas* are made. Secondly, it brings two ideas whether *simple* or *complex* together, and sets them by one another, so as to take a view of them at once without uniting them into one; by which way it gets all its ideas of relations. Thirdly, it separates them from all other ideas that accompany them in their real existence. And thus all its *general ideas* are made. I shall here begin with the first of these, and come to the other two in their due places. As *simple ideas* are observed to exist in several combinations united together, so the mind may consider them as united, not only as they are really united in external objects, but as itself has joined them. *Ideas* thus made up of several ones put together, I call *complex*, as *Man*, *Army*, *Beauty*, *Gratitude*, &c. By this faculty of repeating and joining together its *ideas*, the mind has  
great



great power in varying and multiplying the objects of its thoughts. But it is still confined to those simple *ideas* which it received from the two sources of *sensation* and *reflection*. It can have no other *ideas* of sensible qualities, than what come from without by the senses, nor any other *ideas* of the operations of a thinking substance, than what it finds in itself: But having once got these simple *ideas*, it can by its own power put them together, and make new *complex ones*, which it never received so united.

§ 2. Complex *ideas* however compounded, and de-compounded, though their number be infinite, and their variety endless, may all be reduced under these three heads, first *Modes*, secondly *Substances*, thirdly *Relations*.

§ 3. *Modes*, I call such complex *ideas* which contain not the supposition of subsisting by themselves, but are considered as dependences on, and affections of substances, as *Triangle*, *Gratitude*, *Murder*, &c. These modes are of two sorts, first *Simple*, which are combinations of the same simple *idea*, as a *Dozen*, *Score*, &c. which are but the *ideas* of so many distinct units put together. Secondly, *Mixed*, which are compounded of simple *ideas* of several kinds, as *Beauty*, which consists in a certain composition of colour and figure, causing delight in the beholder. *Theft*, which is the concealed change of the possession of any thing without the consent of the proprietor. These visibly contain a combination of *ideas*, of several kinds.

§ 4. Secondly, *Substances*, the *ideas* of substances are only such combinations of simple *ideas* as are taken to represent distinct particular things subsisting by



themselves; in which the confused *idea* of substance is always the chief. Thus a combination of the *ideas* of a certain figure, with the powers of Motion, Thought, and Reasoning joined to substance, make the ordinary *idea* of Man.

§ 5. *These* again are either of *single substances*, as *Man, stone*; or of *collective*, or several put together, as *Army, Heap*: *Ideas* of several substances thus put together, are as much each of them one *single idea*, as that of a *Man*, or an *Unit*.

§ 6. Thirdly, *Relations* which consist in the consideration and comparing one *idea* with another. Of these several kinds we shall treat in their order.

\*\*\*\*\*

### C H A P. XIII.

*Of Simple Modes, and first of the Simple Modes of Space.*

#### § 1.

CONCERNING *Simple Modes* we may observe that the modifications of any *simple Idea*, are as perfectly different and distinct *ideas* in the mind, as those of the greatest distance or contrariety; thus *Two* is as distinct from *Three*, as *Blueness* from *Heat*. Under this head I shall first consider the modes of *Space*.

§ 2. *Space* is a simple *idea* which we get both by our sight and touch. When we consider it barely in length between two bodies, 'tis called *Distance*; when in length, breadth and thickness, it may be called *Capacity*. When considered between the extremities of matter, which fills the capacity of space with something solid, tangible and moveable, it is called *Extension*;

*tion* ; and thus *Extension* will be an *idea* belonging to body : But *Space* may be conceived without it.

§ 3. Each different *distance* is a different modification of *space* ; and each *idea* of any different *space* is a *Simple Mode* of this *idea*. Such are an *Inch*, *Foot*, *Yard*; &c which are the *ideas* of certain stated lengths which men settle in their minds for the use, and by the custom of measuring. When these *ideas* are made familiar to mens thoughts, they can in their minds repeat them as often as they will, without joining to them the *idea* of body, and frame to themselves the *ideas* of Feet, Yards, or Fathoms beyond the utmost bounds of all bodies, and by adding these still one to another, enlarge their *idea* of *space* as much as they please. From this power of repeating any *idea* of Distance, *without being ever able to come to an end*, we come by the *idea* of immensity.

§ 4. Another modification of *Space* is taken from the *Relation* of the parts of the termination of *Extension* or circumscribed *space* amongst themselves : And this is what we call *Figure*. This the *Touch* discovers in sensible bodies, whose extremities come within our reach : And the *Eye* takes both from bodies and colours, whose boundaries are within its view ; where observing how the extremities terminate either in straight lines, which meet at discernible angles ; or in crooked lines, wherein no angles can be perceived ; by considering these as they relate to one another in all parts of the extremities of any body or *space*, it has that *idea* we call *Figure* ; which affords to the mind infinite variety.

§ 5. Another *Mode* belonging to this head, is that of *Place*. Our idea of *Place* is nothing but the relative position of any thing with reference to its distance from some fixed and certain points. Whence we say, that a thing has or has not changed *Place*, when its distance either is or is not altered with respect to those bodies with which we have occasion to compare it. That this is so, we may easily gather from hence; that we can have no idea of the place of the *Universe*, though we can of all its parts. To say that the world is *somewhere*, means no more, than that it does *exist*. The word *Place* is sometimes taken to signify that *Space* which any body takes up; and so the Universe may be conceived in a *Place*.

§ 6. ‘ *Body* and *extension* are two distinct ideas. For, first, *extension* includes no solidity nor resistance to the motion of *body*, as *body* does. Secondly, the parts of pure space are inteparable one from the other; so that the continuity cannot be separated, neither really, nor mentally. Thirdly, the parts of pure *space* are immoveable, which follows from their inseparability; *motion* being nothing but change of distance between any two things: But this cannot be between parts that are inteparable; which therefore must needs be at perpetual rest one amongst another.’

§ 7. ‘ If it be demanded, (as usually it is), whether this *space*, void of *body*, be *substance* or *accident*? I shall readily answer, I know not: Nor shall be ashamed to own my ignorance, till they that ask shew me a clear distinct *idea* of substance ’

§ 8. ‘ They who first ran into the notion of *accidents*, as a sort of real beings, that needed something

‘ thing to inhere in, were forced to find out the  
‘ word *substance*, to support them. Had the poor  
‘ Indian philosopher, (who imagined that the earth  
‘ also wanted something to bear it up) but thought of  
‘ this word *substance*, he needed not to have been at  
‘ the trouble to find an elephant to support it, and a  
‘ tortoise to support his elephant. The word *sub-*  
‘ *stance* would have done it effectually.

§ 9. ‘ But the question being here. Whether the  
‘ *idea of space or extension be the same with the idea*  
‘ *of body*, it is not necessary to prove the real existence  
‘ of a *vacuum*, but the *idea* of it ; which it is plain  
‘ men have, when they enquire and dispute whether  
‘ there be a *vacuum* or no ? For if they had not the  
‘ *idea* of space without body, they could not make  
‘ a question about its existence. Whatever men shall  
‘ think concerning the existence of a *vacuum*, this is  
‘ plain to me, that we have as clear an *idea of space*  
‘ *distinct from solidity*, as we have of solidity distinct  
‘ from motion, or motion from space. We have  
‘ not any two more distinct *ideas*, and we can  
‘ as easily conceive space without solidity, as we can  
‘ conceive body or space without motion, though it  
‘ be never so certain, that neither body nor motion can  
‘ exist without space.’

+++++

## C H A P. XIV.

*Of Duration and its Simple Modes.*

## § 1.

**T**HERE is another sort of *Distance*, the *idea* of which we get from the fleeting, and perpetually perishing parts of succession, which we call *Duration*. The Simple Modes of it are any different lengths of it, whereof we have distinct *ideas*, as *Hours, Days, Years, &c. Time and Eternity*

§ 2. The *idea* of *Succession* is got by reflecting on that train of *ideas* which constantly follow one another in our minds as long as we are awake. The distance between any parts of this *Succession* is what we call *Duration*: And the continuation of the existence of ourselves, or any thing else *commensurate* to the succession of any *ideas* in our minds, is what we call our *own Duration*, or that of another thing co-existing with our thinking. That this is so, appears from hence, that we have no perception of succession or duration, when that succession of our *ideas* ceases, as in *Sleep*: The moment that we sleep, and awake, how distant soever, seems to be joined and connected. And possibly it would be so to a waking man, could he fix upon one *idea* without variation, and the succession of others. And we see that they whose thoughts are very intent upon one thing, let slip out of their account a good part of that *Duration*, and think that time shorter than it is. But if a man during his sleep *dream*, and variety of *ideas* make themselves percep-

perceptible in his mind one after another, he hath then, during such dreaming, a sense of duration and of the length of it.

§ 3. A man having once got this *idea* of duration can apply it to things which exist while he does not think : And thus we measure the time of our sleep, as well as that wherein we are awake.

§ 4. Those who think we get the *idea* of *succession* from our observation of motion, by our senses, will be of our opinion, when they consider that motion produces in the mind an *idea* of succession, no otherways than as it produces there a continued train of distinguishable *ideas*. A man that looks upon a body really moving perceives no motion, unless that motion produces a constant *train of successive ideas*. But wherever a man is, though all things be at rest about him, if he thinks, he will be *conscious* of *Succession* without perceiving any motion. Hence motions very slow are not perceived by us ; because the change of distance is so slow, that it causes no new *ideas* in us, but after a long interval. The same happens in things that move very swift, which not affecting the sense with several distinguishable distances of their motion, cause not any train of *ideas* in our minds, and consequently are not perceived. Thus any thing that moves round in a circle in less time than our *ideas* are wont to succeed one another in our minds, is not perceived to move, but seems to be a perfect intire circle of that matter which is in motion. Such a part of duration as takes up the time of only one *idea* in our minds, wherein we perceive no succession, we call an *Instant*. ' Hence I leave it to others to judge, whether it be not probable, that our *ideas* do succeed

' one



‘ another in our minds at certain distances, sometimes faster, and sometimes slower; but there seems to be *certain bounds to the quickness and slowness of the succession* of those ideas one to another in our minds, beyond which they can neither delay nor hasten.’

§ 5. *Duration, as marked by certain periods and measures*, is what we most properly call *Time*: which we measure by the diurnal and annual Revolutions of the Sun, as being constant, regular, and universally observable by all mankind, and supposed equal to one another.

§ 6. It is not necessary that time should be measured by motion: Any constant periodical appearance in seemingly equidistant spaces, may as well distinguish the intervals of *Time* as what we make use of. For supposing the sun to be lighted, and then extinguished every day: And that in the space of an annual revolution, it should sensibly encrease in brightness, and so decrease again; such a regular appearance would serve to measure out the distances of duration, to all that could observe it, as well without, as with motion. The freezing of water, the blowing of a plant returning at equidistant periods in all the parts of the earth would serve for the same purpose. In effect, we find that a people of *America* counted their years by the coming and going away of birds at certain seasons.

§ 7. ‘ We must carefully distinguish betwixt duration itself, and the measures we make use of to judge of its length. Duration in itself, is to be considered as going on in one constant, equal, uniform course: But none of the measures of it, which we make



' make use of, can be known to do so ; nor can we  
 ' be assured, that their assigned parts or periods are  
 ' equal in duration one to another ; ~~for~~ two successive  
 ' lengths of durations, however measured, can never  
 ' be demonstrated to be equal. All that we can do  
 ' for a measure of time, is to take such as have con-  
 ' tinual successive appearances at seemingly equidistant  
 ' periods ; of which *seeming equality we have no other*  
 ' *measure, but such as the train of our own ideas have*  
 ' lodged in our memories, with the concurrence of  
 ' other probable reasons, to persuade us of their e-  
 ' quality.'

§ 8. The mind having once got such a measure  
 of *Time*, as the annual revolution of the sun, can easily  
 apply it to *Duration* wherein that measure itself did not  
 exist : And the idea of *Duration* equal to an *Annual*  
*Revolution of the Sun*, is as easily applicable in our  
 thoughts to *Duration* where no Sun, nor motion was,  
 as the idea of a *Foot* or *Yard* to distances beyond the  
 confines of the world.

§ 9. By the same means, and from the same ori-  
 ginal that we come to have the idea of *Time*, we  
 have also that idea which we call *Eternity* : For hav-  
 ing got the ideas of certain lengths of *Duration*, we  
 can in our thoughts add them to one another as oft as we  
 please, without ever coming to an end.

§ 10. And thus it is plain, that from the two  
 fountains of all knowledge before-mentioned, viz.  
*Sensation* and *Reflection*, we get the ideas of *Duration*,  
 and the several measures of it. For,

1<sup>st</sup>, By observing what passes in our minds, how  
 our ideas there in train constantly, some vanish, and  
 others

others begin to appear, we come by the idea of *Succession*.

2dly, By observing a distance in the parts of this Succession, we get the idea of *Duration*.

3dly, By observing certain appearances at regular and seemingly equidistant periods, we get the ideas of certain lengths or measures of *Duration*, as *Minutes, Hours, Days, &c*

4thly, By being able to repeat those measures of Time, as often as we will, we can come to imagine *Duration, where nothing does really endure or exist*: Thus we imagine to-morrow, next year, or seven years hence.

5thly, By being able to repeat any such idea of any length of Time, as of a Minute, Year, &c. as often as we will, and add them one to another without ever coming to an end, we come by the idea of *Eternity*.

6thly, By considering any part of infinite Duration, as set out by periodical measures, we come by the idea of what we call *Time* in general.

\*\*\*\*\*

## C H A P. XV.

*Of Duration and Expansion considered together.*

### § 1.

‘ THE Mind, having got the idea of the length  
 ‘ of any part of *expansion*, can, as has been  
 ‘ said, repeat that idea, and so adding it to the for-  
 ‘ mer. *enlarge its idea of length*, and so as often as  
 ‘ it will, till it equals the distance of any parts of  
 ‘ the

‘ the earth one from another, and increase thus, till  
 ‘ it amounts to the distance of the sun, or remotest  
 ‘ star. It is true, we can easily in our thoughts  
 ‘ come to the extremity and bounds of all body :  
 ‘ But when the mind is there, it finds nothing to  
 ‘ hinder its progress into this endless expansion ; of  
 ‘ that it can neither find nor conceive any end. Nor  
 ‘ let any one say, that beyond the bounds of body  
 ‘ there is nothing at all, unless he will confine God  
 ‘ within the limits of matter.’

§ 2. ‘ Just so is it in duration, *the mind, having*  
 ‘ *got the idea of any length of duration, can double,*  
 ‘ *multiply, and enlarge it,* beyond all the measures of  
 ‘ time ; taken from the great bodies of the world,  
 ‘ and their motions. But yet every one easily ad-  
 ‘ mits, that though we make duration boundless, we  
 ‘ cannot yet extend it beyond all being God, eve-  
 ‘ ry one easily allows, fills eternity ; and it is hard  
 ‘ to find a reason, why any one should doubt that  
 ‘ he likewise fills immensity ? His infinite being is  
 ‘ certainly as boundless one way as another ; and me-  
 ‘ thinks it ascribes a little too much to matter, to say,  
 ‘ where there is no body, there is nothing.’

§ 3. Time is to *Duration* as *Place* is to *Space* or  
*Expansion*. They are so much of those boundless  
 oceans of *Eternity* and *Immensity* as is set out and  
 distinguished from the rest : And so are made use of  
 to denote the position of finite real beings in respect  
 one to another, in those infinite oceans of *Duration*  
 and *Space*.

§ 4. Each of these have a *twofold* *acceptation*.  
*First*, Time in general is taken for so much of infi-  
 nite Duration as is coexistent with the Universe, and

E

measured

measured out by the motions of its great bodies. Thus it is used in the phrases *before all time, when time shall be no more.* Place is likewise taken for that *portion* of infinite space possessed by the material world, though this might be more properly called *Extension*. Within *these two* are confined the particular Time or Duration, Extension or Place of all corporeal beings.

§. 5. *Secondly*, Time is sometimes applied to parts of that infinite Duration that were not really measured out by real existence, but such as we upon occasion do suppose equal to certain lengths of measured time, as in the *Julian Period* which makes an excursion of seven hundred sixty four years beyond the Creation. Thus we may speak of Place or Distance in the great *Inane*. wherein I can conceive a space equal to, or capable of receiving a body of any assigned dimensions.

§ 6. ‘ *Where and when* are questions belonging to all finite existences, and are by us always reckoned from some known parts of this sensible world, and from some certain epochs marked out to us by the motions observable in it. Without some such fixed parts or periods, the order of things would be lost, to our finite understandings, in the boundless invariable oceans of duration and expansion; which comprehend in them all finite beings, and, in their full extent, belong only to the Deity.’

§ 7. ‘ But there is this manifest difference between the *ideas* of duration and expansion, that the *ideas* of length, which we have of *expansion*, are turned every way, and so make figure, and breadth, and thickness; but *duration* is but as it were the  
‘ *length*

length of one streight line, extended in infinitum,  
 not capable of multiplicity, variation, or figure;  
 but is one common measure of all existence whatsoever, wherein all things, whilst they exist, equally partake. Whether angels and spirits have any analogy to this, in respect of expansion, is beyond my comprehension. And perhaps, it is near as hard for us to have an *idea* of any real being, with a perfect negation of all manner of expansion; as it is, to have the idea of any real existence, with a perfect negation of all manner of duration. And therefore what spirits have to do with space, or how they communicate in it, we know not.



## C H A P. XVI.

*Of Numbers.*

## § 1.

THE complex *ideas* of *Number* are formed by adding several *Units* together. The *Simple Modes* of it are each several combinations, as, *Two Three, &c.* These are of all others most distinct, the nearest being as clearly different from each other as the most remote: *Two* being as distinct from *One*, as two hundred. But it is hard to form distinct *ideas* of every the least excess in extension. Hence demonstrations in numbers are more general in their use, and more determinate in their application than those of Extension.

§ 2. *Simple Modes* of Numbers, being in our minds but so many combinations of Units which have no variety, but more or less: *Names* for each distinct combination, seem more necessary than in any other sort of *ideas*. For without a *name* or *mark*, to distinguish that precise collection, it will hardly be kept from being a heap of confusion. Hence some *Americans* have no distinct *idea* of any number beyond twenty: So that when they are discoursed with of greater numbers, they shew the hairs of their head.

§ 3. ‘ To show how much *distinct names* conduce to our well reckoning, or having useful *ideas* of numbers, let us set all these following figures, as the marks of one number, *viz.*

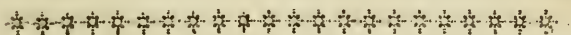
Nonillions,	Octillions.	Septillions.	
857324.	162486.	345896.	
Sextillions.	Quintillions.	Quatrillions.	
437916.	423147.	248106.	
Trillions.	Billions.	Millions.	Units.
235421.	261734.	368149.	623137.

‘ The ordinary way of naming this number in *Eng-*  
‘ *lish*, will be the often repeating of millions, of mil-  
‘ lions, of millions, of millions, of millions, of mil-  
‘ lions, of millions, of millions, (which is the deno-  
‘ mination of the second six figures), in which way,  
‘ it will be very hard to have any distinguishing no-  
‘ tions of this number. But whether, by giving  
‘ every six figures a new and orderly denomination,  
‘ these, and perhaps a great many more figures in  
‘ progression, might not easily be counted distinctly,  
‘ and



' and *ideas* of them both got more easily to ourselves, and more plainly signified to others, I leave it to be considered.'

§ 4. So that to reckon right, two things are required: *First*, That the mind distinguish carefully two *ideas* which are different one from another, only by the addition or subtraction of one Unit. Secondly, That it retain in memory the names or marks of the several combinations from a Unit to that number; and that in exact order, as they follow one another. In either of which if it fails, the whole business of *Numbering* will be disturbed; and there will remain only the confused *idea* of *Multitude*: but the *ideas* necessary to distinct Numeration will not be attained to.



## CH A P. XVII.

### *Of Infinity.*

#### § 1.

THE *idea* signified by the name *Infinity*, is best examined, by considering to what *Infinity* is by the Mind attributed, and then how it frames it. *Finite* and *Infinite* then are looked upon as the modes of Quantity, and attributed primarily to things that have parts, and are capable of increase or diminution, by the *Addition* or *Subtraction* of any the least part. Such are the *ideas* of *Space*, *Duration*, and *Number*.

§. 2. When we apply this *idea* to the *Supreme Being*, we do it primarily in respect of his *Duration* and *Ubiquity*; more figuratively when to his *Wisdom*,



*Power, Goodness, and other attributes which are properly inexhaustible and incomprehensible: For when we call them Infinite, we have no other idea of this Infinity, but what carries with it some reflection on the Number, or the Extent of the acts or objects of God's Power and Wisdom, which can never be supposed so great or so many, that these attributes will not always surmount and exceed, though we multiply them in our thoughts, with the Infinity of endless Number. I do not pretend to say, how these attributes are in God, who is infinitely beyond the reach of our narrow capacities: But this is our way of conceiving them, and these our ideas of their Infinity.*

§ 3. The next thing to be considered, is *how we come by the idea of Infinity.* Every one that has any idea of any stated lengths of Space, as a *Fest, Yard, &c.* finds that he can repeat that idea, and join it to another, to a *Third*, and to on without ever coming to an end of his Additions: From this power of enlarging his idea of Space, he takes the idea of Infinite Space or *Immensify*. By the same power of repeating the idea of any length of Duration we have in our minds, with all the endless addition of Number, we come by the idea of *Eternity*.

§ 4. If our idea of *Infinity* be got by repeating without end our own ideas; why do we not attribute it to other ideas, as well as these of *Space and Duration*; since they may be as easily and as often repeated in our minds as the other: Yet no body ever thinks of infinite *Sweetness* or *Whiteness*, though he can repeat the idea of *Sweet* or *white* as frequently as those of *Yard* or *Day*. I answer, that those ideas that have parts, and are capable of increase, by the addition of  
any

any parts, afford us by their repetition an *idea* of Infinity; because with the endless repetition there is continued an enlargement, of which there is no end: But it is not so in other *ideas*: For if to the perfectest *idea* I have of *White*, I add another of equal whiteness; it enlarges not my *idea* at all. Those *ideas* that consist not of parts, cannot be augmented to what proportion men please, or be stretched beyond what they have received by their senses, but *Space*, *Duration*, and *Number* being capable of increase by repetition, leave in the mind an *idea* of an endless room for more; and so those *ideas* alone lead the mind towards the thought of infinity.

§ 5. We are carefully to distinguish between the *idea* of the *Infinity of Space*, and the *idea* of a *Space Infinite*. The first is nothing but a supposed endless progression of the mind over any repeated *idea* of Space. But to have actually in the mind the *idea* of a Space Infinite, is to suppose the mind already passed over all those repeated *ideas* of Space, which an endless repetition can never totally represent to it; which carries in it a plain contradiction.

§ 6. This will be plainer, if we consider *Infinity in Numbers*. The Infinity of numbers, to the end of whole addition every one perceives there is no approach, easily appears to any one that reflects on it: But how clear soever this *idea* of the Infinity of Number be, there is nothing yet more evident than the absurdity of the actual *idea* of Infinite Number.

§ 7. ' And since in any bulk of matter, our  
' thoughts can never arrive at the utmost *divisibility*,  
' therefore there is an apparent Infinity to us also in  
' that, which has the Infinity also of Number, but  
' with

‘ with this difference, that in the former consideration of the Infinity of Space and Duration, we only use addition of numbers; whereas this is like the division of an unit into its fractions, wherein the mind also can proceed in *infinitum*, as well as in the former additions, it being indeed but the addition still of new numbers: Though in the addition of the one, we can have no more the positive idea of a space infinitely great, than in the division of the other, we can have the *idea* of a body infinitely little; our *idea* of Infinity being, as I may so say, a growing and fugitive *idea*, still in a boundless progression, that can stop no where.’

§ 3. ‘ The *idea* of Infinite, has, I confess, something of positive in all those things we apply to it. When we would think of Infinite Space or Duration, we at first step usually make some very large *idea*, as, perhaps, of millions of ages, or miles, which possibly we double and multiply several times. All that we thus amass together in our thoughts, is positive, and the assemblage of a great number of positive *ideas* of Space or Duration. But what still remains beyond this, we have no more a positive distinct notion of, than a mariner has of the depth of the sea, where having let down a large portion of his sounding line, he reaches no bottom: Whereby he knows the depth to be so many fathoms and more; but how much that more is, he hath no distinct notion at all: And could he always supply new line, and find the plummet sink, without ever stopping, he would be something in the posture of the mind reaching after a complete and positive *idea* of Infinity.

§ 9. ' I have been hitherto apt to think, that the  
 ' great and *inextricable difficulties* which perpetually  
 ' involve all discourses *concerning infinity*, whether  
 ' of space, duration, or divisibility, have been the  
 ' certain *marks of a defect in our ideas of Infinity*,  
 ' and the disproportion the nature thereof has to  
 ' the comprehension of our narrow capacities. For  
 ' whilst men talk and dispute of infinite Space or  
 ' duration, as if they had as compleat and positive  
 ' *ideas* of them. as they have of a yard, or an hour,  
 ' it is no wonder, if their minds be overlaid by an  
 ' object too large and mighty to be surveyed and  
 ' managed by them.'

+++++

## C H A P. XVIII.

### *Of other Simple Modes.*

#### § 1.

THE mind has several distinct *ideas* of *Sliding*,  
*Rolling*, *Walking*, *Creeping*, &c. which are all  
 but the different modifications of motion. *Swift and*  
*Slow* are two different *ideas* of Motion, the measures  
 whereof are made out of the distances of Time and  
 Space put together.

§ 2. The like variety we have in *Sounds*: Every  
 articulate word is a different modification of sound:  
 As are also notes of different length put together,  
 which make that complex *idea* called *Tune*.

§ 3. The modes of *Colours* might be also very  
 various: Some of which we take notice of, as the  
 different degrees, or as they are termed shades of the  
 same

same colour. But since we seldom make assemblages of Colours without taking in Figure also, as in Painting, &c. those which are taken notice of do most commonly belong to mixed modes, as *Beauty*, *Rainbow*, &c.

§ 4. All compounded *Tastes* and *Smells* are also modes made up of the simple *ideas* of those senses: But they being such as generally we have no names for, cannot be set down in writing, but must be left to the thoughts and experience of the reader.



## C H A P. XIX.

### *Of the Modes of Thinking.*

#### § 1.

WHEN the mind turns its view inwards upon itself, *Thinking* is the first *idea* that occurs: Wherein it observes a great variety of modifications; and thereof frames to itself distinct *ideas*. Thus the perception annexed to any impression on the body made by an external object, is called *Sensation*. When an *idea* recurs without the presence of the object, it is called *Remembrance*. When sought after by the mind, and brought again in view, it is *Recollection*. When held there long under attentive consideration it is *Contemplation*. When *ideas* float in the mind without regard or reflection, it is called in French *Reverie*, our language has scarce a name for it. When the *ideas* are taken notice of, and as it were registered in the memory, it is *Attention*. When the mind fixes its view on any one *idea*, and considers

ders it on all sides, it is *Intention* and *Study*. *Sleep* without dreaming is rest from all these. And *Dreaming* is the perception of *ideas* in the mind, not suggested by any external objects, or known occasions; nor under any choice or conduct of the Understanding. Of these various modes of Thinking, the mind forms as distinct *ideas*, as it does of White and Red, a Square or a Circle.

§. 2. ' From hence I further conclude, that since  
' the mind can sensibly put on, at several times, several  
' degrees of *thinking*; and be sometimes even  
' in a waking man so remiss, as to have thoughts  
' dim and obscure to that degree, that they are very  
' little removed from none at all; and at last in the  
' dark retirement of sound sleep, loses the sight perfectly  
' of all ideas whatsoever: Since, I say, this is  
' evidently so in matter of fact, and constant experience,  
' I ask, whether it be not probable, that  
' *thinking is the action, not the essence of the soul?*  
' Since the operations of agents will easily admit of  
' intention and remission; but the essences of things,  
' are not conceived capable of any such variation.'

\*\*\*\*\*

## C H A P. XX.

### *Of the Modes of Pleasure and Pain.*

#### § 1.

PLEASURE and Pain are simple *ideas* which we receive both from Sensation and Reflection. There are thoughts of the Mind, as well as sensations, accompanied with Pleasure or Pain. Their causes are termed



termed *Good* or *Evil*. For things are esteemed Good or Evil only in reference to Pleasure or Pain. That we call *Good* which is apt to cause or increase Pleasure, or diminish Pain in us : To procure or preserve the possession of any Good, or absence of any Evil : And on the contrary, that we call *Evil*, which is apt to produce or increase any Pain, or diminish any Pleasure in us : Or else to procure us any Evil, or deprive us of any Good : By Pleasure and Pain I would be understood to mean of *Body* or *Mind*, as they are commonly distinguished ; though in truth they are only different constitutions of the mind, sometimes occasioned by disorder in the body, sometimes by thoughts of the mind.

§ 2 *Pleasure* and *Pain*, and their causes *Good* and *Evil*, are the hinges upon which our passions turn : By reflecting on the various modifications or tempers of mind, and the internal sensations which Pleasure and Pain, Good and Evil produce in us, we may thence form to ourselves the *ideas* of our Passions. Thus, by reflecting upon the thought we have of the delight, which any thing is apt to produce in us, we have an *idea* we call *Love* : And, on the contrary, the thought of the Pain, which any thing present or absent produces in us, is what we call *Hatred*. *Desire* is that uneasiness which a man finds in himself upon the absence of any thing, the present enjoyment of which carries the *idea* of Delight with it. *Joy* is a Delight of the mind arising from the present or assured approaching possession of a Good. *Sorrow* is an uneasiness of the mind upon the thought of a Good lost, or the sense of a present Evil. *Hope* is a Pleasure in the mind upon the thought of a probable future



ture enjoyment of a thing which is apt to delight. *Fear* is an uneasiness of the mind upon the thought of a future Evil likely to befall us. *Anger* is a discomposure of mind upon the receipt of injury, with a present purpose of Revenge. *Despair* is the thought of the unattainableness of any Good. *Envy* is an uneasiness of mind, caused by the consideration of a Good we desire, obtained by one we think should not have had it before us.

§ 3. It is to be considered that in reference to the Passions, the removal or lessening of a Pain, is considered, and operates as a Pleasure : And the loss, or diminishing of a Pleasure, as a Pain. And farther, that the Passions in most persons operate on the body, and cause various changes in it : But these being not always sensible, do not make a necessary part of the *idea* of each Passion. Besides these modes of Pleasure and Pain which result from the various considerations of Good and Evil, there are many others, I might have instanced in, as the *Pain* of *Hunger* and *Thirst*, and the *Pleasure* of *Eating* and *Drinking* ; and of *Musick*, &c. but I rather chose to instance in the Passions, as being of much more concernment to us ; and show how the *ideas* we have of them, are derived from Sensation and Reflection.

\*\*\*\*\*

## C H A P. XXI.

### *Of Power.*

#### § 1.

THE mind being every day informed by the senses, of the alteration of those simple *ideas* it observes

F

in

in things without: Reflecting also on what passes within itself, and observing a constant change of its *ideas*, sometimes by the impressions of outward objects upon the senses; and sometimes by the determination of its own choice: And concluding from what it has so constantly observed to have been, that the like changes will for the future be made in the same things, by the same agents, and by the like ways, considers in one thing the possibility of having any of its simple *ideas* changed; and in another, the possibility of making that change, and so comes by that *idea* which we call *Power*. Thus we say *Fire* has a power to *melt Gold*, and make it fluid; and *Gold* has a Power to be *melted*.

§ 2. Power thus considered, is twofold, viz as able to make, or able to receive any change: The one may be called *Active*, the other *Passive Power*. Of *passive power* all sensible things abundantly furnish us with *ideas*, whose sensible qualities and beings we find to be in a continual flux, and therefore with reason we look on them as liable still to the same change. Nor have we of *Active Power* fewer instances: Since, whatever change is observed, the mind must collect a power somewhere able to make that change. But yet if we will consider it attentively, bodies by our senses do not afford us so clear and distinct an *idea* of *Active Power*, as we have from reflection on the operations of our minds. For all power relating to Action, and there being but two sorts of *Action*, viz. *Thinking* and *Motion*, let us consider whence we have the clearest *ideas* of the powers which produce these actions.

§ 3. Of *Thinking*, Body affords us no *idea* at all:

It

It is only from Reflection that we have that; neither have we from Body any *idea* of the beginning of motion. A body at rest affords us no *idea* of any *Active* Power to move; and when it is set in motion itself, that Motion is rather a Passion than an Action in it. The *idea* of the beginning of Motion we have only by reflection on what passes in ourselves; where we find by experience that barely by willing it, we can move the parts of our bodies which were before at rest.

§ 4 We find in ourselves a Power to begin or forbear, continue or end several actions of our minds, and motions of our bodies, barely by a thought or preference of the mind. This power which the mind has thus to order the consideration of any *idea*, or the forbearing to consider it; or to prefer the motion of any part of the Body to its Rest, and *vice versa* in any particular instance, is that we call the *Will*. The actual exercise of that power, is that which we call *Volition* or *Willing*.

The forbearance or performance of that Action, consequent to such order or command of the mind, is called *Voluntary*: And whatsoever Action is performed without such a thought of the mind, is called *Involuntary*.

The Power of Perception is that we call the *Understanding*. *Perception*, which we make the Act of the Understanding, is of *three* sorts. *First*, The Perception of *ideas* in our minds. *Secondly*, The Perception of the Signification of Signs. *Thirdly*, The Perception of the Agreement or Disagreement of any distinct *ideas*. These powers of the mind, *viz.* of perceiving and preferring, are usually called by an-

other name ; and the ordinary way of speaking is that the Understanding and Will are two *faculties* of the mind. A word proper enough, if it be used so as not to breed any confusion in mens thoughts, by being supposed, (as I suspect it has been) to stand for some real Beings in the Soul that performs those actions of Understanding and Volition.

§ 5. From the consideration of the Extent of the power of the mind, over the actions of the man, which every one finds in himself, arise the *ideas* of *Liberty* and *Necessity* : So far as a man has a power to think or not to think ; to move or not to move, according to the preference or direction of his own mind, so far is a man *free*. Wherever any performance or forbearance are not equally in a man's power ; wherever doing or not doing will not equally follow upon the preference of his mind, there he is not *free*, though perhaps the action may be *voluntary*. So that the *idea* of *Liberty* is the *idea* of a power in any agent, to do or forbear any action according to the determination or thought of the mind, whereby either of them is preferred to the other ; where either of them is not in the power of the agent to be produced by him, according to his volition, there he is not at liberty : That agent is under *Necessity*. So that *Liberty* cannot be where there is no *Thought*, no *Volition*, no *Will* : But there may be *Thought*, there may be *Will*, there may be *Volition* where there is no *Liberty*. Thus a *Tennis-ball*, whether in motion by the stroke of a racket, or lying still at rest, is not by any one taken to be a free Agent ; because we conceive not a *Tennis-ball* to think, and consequently not to have any *Volition* or *Preference* of *Motion* to *Rest*, or *vice versa*. So a man striking himself or his

his friend, by a convulsive motion of his arms, which it is not in his power by Volition or the direction of his mind, to stop or forbear; no body thinks he has in this *Liberty* every ones pities him as acting by *Necessity* and *Constraint*. Again, suppose a man be carried, whilst fast asleep, into a room where is a person he longs to see, and be there locked fast in beyond his power to get out; he awakes, and is glad to see himself in so desirable company, which he stays willingly in; that is, prefers his staying to going away. Is not this stay voluntary? I think no body will doubt it, and yet, being locked fast in, he is not at liberty to stay, he has not freedom to be gone. So that *Liberty* is not an *idea* belonging to Volition or Preferring; but to the person having the power of doing or forbearing to do, according as the mind shall chuse or direct.

§ 6. As it is in the motions of the body, so it is in the thoughts of our minds: Where any one is such that we have power to take it up, or lay it by according to the Preference of the mind, there we are at liberty. A waking man is not at liberty to think, or not to think no more than he is at liberty whether his body shall touch any other or no: But whether he will remove his contemplation from one *idea* to another is many times in his choice. And then he is, in respect of his *ideas*, as much at liberty as he is in respect of bodies he rests on. He can at pleasure remove himself from one to another: But yet some *ideas* to the mind, like some motions to the body, are such, as in certain circumstances it cannot avoid nor obtain their abtence by the utmost effort it can use. Thus a man on the rack is not at liberty to lay by the *idea* of *Pain*, and entertain other contemplations

§ 7. Wherever Thought is wholly wanting, or the power to act or forbear, according to the direction of Thought, there Necessity takes place. This in an agent capable of Volition, when the beginning or continuation of any action is contrary to the preference of his mind, is called *Compulsion*; when the hindering or stopping any action is contrary to his Volition, it is called *Restraint*. Agents that have no Thought, no Volition at all, are in every thing necessary agents.

§ 8. And thus I have, in a short draught, given a view of our *original ideas*, from whence all the rest are derived, and of which they are made up. And which may be all reduced to these few primary and original ones, *viz. Extension, Solidity, and Mobility*, which by our senses we receive from body: *Thinking* and the *power of moving* which by reflection we receive from our minds. *Existence, Duration, Number*, which belong both to the one and to the other. By these I imagine might be explained the nature of *Colours, Sounds, Tastes, Smells*, and all other *ideas* we have; if we had but faculties acute enough to perceive the several modified extensions and motions of these minute bodies which produce those several sensations in us.

\*\*\*\*\*

## C H A P. XXII.

### *Of Mixed Modes.*

#### § 1.

**M**IXED *Modes* are combinations of *simple ideas* of different kinds, (whereby they are distinguished



guished from simple modes, which consist only of simple *ideas* of the same kind, put together by the mind) as *Virtue Vice, a Lie, &c* The mind being once furnished with simple *ideas*, can put them together in several compositions, without examining whether they exist so together in nature. And hence I think it is, that these ideas are called *Notions*, as if they had their original and constant existence more in the thoughts of men than in the reality of things: And to form such ideas it sufficed that the mind put the parts of them together, and that they were consistent in the understanding, without considering whether they had any real being. There are three ways whereby we get these complex ideas of *mixed Modes*.

§ 2. *First*, By *experience* and observation of things themselves: Thus by seeing two men wrestle, we get the *idea* of wrestling

§ 3. *Secondly*, By *invention* or voluntary putting together of several simple *ideas* in our own minds; so he that first invented PRINTING had an *idea* of it first in his mind, before it ever existed.

§ 4. *Thirdly*, By *explaining* the names of actions we never saw, or notions we cannot see; and by enumerating all those *ideas* which go to the making them up. Thus the mixed Mode which the word *Lie* stands for, is made up of these simple *ideas*: First, *Articulate sounds*. Secondly, *Certain ideas in the mind of the speaker*. Thirdly, *Those words, the signs of these ideas*. Fourthly, *These signs put together by Affirmation or Negation, otherwise than the ideas they stand for, are in the mind of the speaker*. Since languages are made, *complex ideas* are usually got by the explication of those terms that stand for them: For  
since

since they consist of simple *ideas* combined, they may by words standing for those simple *ideas* be represented to the mind of one who understands those words, though that combination of simple *ideas* was never offered to his mind by the real existence of things.

§ 5 Mixed Modes have their *unity* from an act of the mind, combining those several simple *ideas* together, and considering them as one complex one: The *mark* of this union is one *name* given to that combination. Men seldom reckon any number of *ideas* to make one complex one: But such collections as there be names for. Thus the *killing of an old man*, is as fit to be united into one *complex idea*, as that of a *father*: Yet, there being no name for it, it is not taken for a particular complex *idea*; nor a distinct species of action, from that of killing any other man.

§ 6 Those collections of *ideas* have names generally affixed, which are of frequent use in conversation: In which cases men endeavour to communicate their thoughts to one another with all possible dispatch. Those others which they have seldom occasion to mention, they tie not together, nor give them names.

§ 7. This gives the reason, why *there are words in every language, which cannot be rendered by any one single word of another*. For the fashions and customs of one nation, make several combinations of *ideas* familiar in one, which another had never any occasion to make. Such were, *Ὀργαζισμός* among the *Greeks*, *Proscriptio* among the *Romans*. This also occasions the constant change of languages; because the change of custom and opinions, brings with it new combinations of *ideas*, which, to avoid long descriptions, have new names annexed to them, and so they become new species of mixed modes.

§ 8. *Of all our simple ideas, those that have had most mixed modes made out of them, are Thinking and Motion; (which comprehend in them all Action) and Power, from whence these actions are conceived to flow. For actions being the great business of mankind, it is no wonder if the several modes of Thinking and Motion should be taken notice of, the ideas of them observed and laid up in memory, and have names assigned them. For without such complex ideas with names to them, men could not easily hold any communication about them. Of this kind are the modes of actions distinguished by their causes, Means, Objects, Ends, Instruments, Time, Place, and other circumstances; as also of the powers fitted for those actions: Thus Boldness is the power to do or speak what we intend without fear or disorder: Which power of doing any thing, when it has been acquired by the frequent doing the same thing, is that idea we call Habit: when forward and ready upon every occasion to break into action, we call it Disposition. Thus Testiness, is a disposition or aptness to be angry.*

§ 9. *Power being the source of all action, the substances wherein these powers are, when they exert this power, are called Causes: And the substances thereupon produced, or the simple ideas introduced into any subject, Effects. The efficacy whereby the new substance or idea is produced, is called in the subject exerting that power, Action; in the subject wherein any simple idea is changed, or produced, Passion: Which efficacy in intellectual agents, we can, I think, conceive to be nothing else but modes of Thinking and Willing: in corporeal agents, nothing else but modifications of motion. Whatever sort of*  
action

action besides these produces any effect, I confess myself to have no notion, or *idea* of. And therefore many words which seem to express some action signify nothing of the action, but barely the effect, with some circumstances of the subject wrought on, or cause operating. Thus *Creation*, *Annihilation*, contain in them no *idea* of the action or manner, whereby they are produced, but barely of the cause, and the thing done. And when a country man says the cold *freezes water*, though the word *Freezing*, seem to import some action, yet it truly signifies nothing but the effect, viz. That water that was before *fluid*, is become *hard*, and *consistent*, without containing any *idea* of the action whereby it is done.

\*\*\*\*\*

## C H A P. XXIII.

*Of our Complex Ideas of substances.*

### § 1.

THE mind observing several simple *ideas* to go constantly together, which being presumed to belong to one thing, are called so united in one subject by one name, which we are apt afterward to talk of and consider as one simple *idea*, which indeed is a complication of many *ideas* together. We imagine not these simple *ideas* to subsist by themselves, but suppose some *substratum*, wherein they subsist, which we call *substance*. The *idea* of *pure substance* is nothing but the *supposed*, but *unknown support* of those *qualities* which are capable of producing simple *ideas* in us.

§ 2. The *ideas* of *particular substances* are composed

posed out of this obscure and general *idea* of Substance, together with such combinations of simple *ideas*, as are observed to exist together, and supposed to flow from the internal constitution, and unknown essence of that substance. Thus we come by the *ideas* of *Man*, *Horse*, *Gold*, &c. Thus the sensible qualities of *Iron*, or a *Diamond*, make the complex *ideas* of those substances, which a Smith or a Jeweller commonly knows better than a philosopher.

§ 3. The same happens concerning the operations of the mind, *viz.* *Thinking*, *Reasoning*, &c. which we concluding not to subsist by themselves, nor apprehending how they can belong to body. or be produced by it; we think them the actions of some other substance, which we call *spirit*: *Of whose substance, or nature, we have as clear a notion as that of body*; the one being but the supposed *substratum* of the simple *ideas* we have from without; as the other of those operations which we experiment in ourselves within: So that the *idea* of *corporeal substance* in matter, is as remote from our conceptions as that of *spiritual substance*.

§ 4. Hence we may conclude that he has the perfectest *idea* of any particular substance, who has collected most of those simple *ideas* which do exist in it: Among which we are to reckon its *active powers*, and *passive capacities*, though not strictly *simple ideas*.

§ 5. *Secondary qualities*, for the most part, serve to distinguish substances. For our senses fail us in the discovery of the *Bulk*, *Figure* *Texture*, &c. of the minute parts of bodies on which their real constitutions and differences depend: And secondary qualities are nothing but powers with relation to our senses. The  
*ideas*

*ideas that make our complex ones of corporeal substances,* are of three sorts. *First,* The *ideas* of primary qualities of things, which are discovered by our senses : Such are *Bulk, Figure, Motion, &c.* *Secondly,* The sensible secondary qualities, which are nothing but powers to produce several *ideas* in us by our senses. *Thirdly,* The aptness we consider in any substance to cause, or receive such alterations of primary qualities, as that the substance so altered, should produce in us different *ideas*, from what it did before: And they are called *Active* and *Passive Powers*. All which, as far as we have any notice, or notion of them, terminate in *simple ideas*.

§ 6. Had we senses acute enough to discern the minute particles of bodies, it is not to be doubted, but they would produce quite different *ideas* in us ; as we find in viewing things with *microscopes*. Such bodies as to our naked eyes are coloured and opaque, will through *microscopes* appear pellucid. *Blood* to the naked eye appears all red ; but by a good *microscope* we see only some red globules swimming in a transparent liquor.

§ 7. The *infinite wise Author* of our beings has fitted our organs, and faculties, to the conveniencies of life and the business we have to do here: We may by our senses know and distinguish things so far as to accommodate them to the exigencies of this life. We have also insight enough into their admirable contrivances, and wonderful effects to admire, and magnify the wisdom, power, and goodness of their Author. Such a knowledge as this, which is suited to our present condition, we want not faculties to attain ; and we are



fitted well enough with abilities to provide for the conveniencies of living.

§ 8. Besides the complex *ideas* we have of material Substances; by the simple *ideas* taken from the operations of our own minds, which we experiment in ourselves, as *Thinking, Understanding, Willing, Knowing, &c.* co-existing in the same substance, we are able to frame the complex *idea* of a *Spirit*. And this *idea* of an *immaterial substance*, is as clear as that we have of a *material*. By joining these with Substance, of which we have no distinct *idea*, we have the *idea* of a *Spirit*: And by putting together the *ideas* of coherent, solid parts, and power of being moved, joined with Substance, of which likewise we have no positive *idea*, we have the *idea* of *Matter*. *The one is as clear and distinct as the other.* The substance of *Spirit* is unknown to us; and so is the substance of *Body* equally unknown to us: Two primary qualities or properties of *Body*, viz. *Solid coherent parts*, and *impulse*, we have distinct clear *ideas* of: So likewise have we, of two primary qualities or properties of *Spirit*, *Thinking* and a *power of Action*, 'or a power of putting body into motion by thought'. The *ideas* of *Existence, Duration*, and 'Mobility', are common to them both.' We have also clear and distinct *ideas* of several qualities inherent in bodies, which are but the various modifications of the extension of cohering solid parts, and their motion. We have likewise the *ideas* of the several modes of *Thinking*, viz. *Believing, Doubting, Hoping, Fearing, &c.* as also of *Willing* and *Moving* the *Body* consequent to it.

§ 9. 'There is no reason why it should be thought

‘ strange that I make *Mobility* belong to Spirit : For  
 ‘ having no other idea of *Motion* but change of di-  
 ‘ stance, with other beings that are considered as at  
 ‘ rest, and finding that spirits, as well as bodies  
 ‘ cannot operate but where they are, and that spirits  
 ‘ do operate at several times in several places, I can-  
 ‘ not but attribute change of place to all finite spirits.’

§ 10. If this notion of Spirit may have some difficulties in it, not easy to be explained, we have no more reason to deny or doubt of the *existence of Spirits*, than we have, to deny or doubt of the *existence of Body* : Because the notion of Body is cumbered with some difficulties very hard, and perhaps impossible to be explained. The *divisibility in infinitum*, for instance, of any finite extension, involves us whether we grant or deny it in consequences impossible to be explicated, or made consistent. *We have therefore as much reason to be satisfied with our notion of Spirit, as with our notion of Body ; and the existence of the one, as well as the other.* We have no other idea of the *Supreme Being*, but a complex one of *Existence, Power, Knowledge, Duration, Pleasure, Happiness*, and of several other qualities, and powers which it is better to have than be without, with the addition of *Infinite* to each of these.

§ 11. In which complex *idea* we may observe that there is no simple one, bating *Infinity*, which is not also a part of our complex *idea* of other spirits ; because in our *ideas*, as well of spirits as other things, we are restrained to those we receive from *Sensation* and *Reflection*.

## C H A P. XXIV.

*Of Collective Ideas of Substances.*

**T**HERE are other *ideas* of Substances which may be called *Collective*, which are made up of many particular substances considered as united into one *idea*, as a *Troop*, *Army*, &c. which the mind makes by its power of composition. These *collective* ideas are but the artificial draughts of the mind bringing things remote, and independent into one view, the better to contemplate and discourse of them united into one conception, and signified by one name. For there are no things so remote, which the mind cannot by this art of composition, bring into one *idea*, as is visible in that signified by the name *Universe*.



## C H A P. XXV.

*Of Relation.*

## § 1.

**T**HERE is another set of *ideas*, which the mind gets from the *comparing of one thing with another*. When the mind so considers one thing, that it does as it were bring it to, and set it by another, and carry its view from one to the other, this is *Relation* or *Respect*: And the denominations given to things intimating that Respect, are what we call *Relatives*, and the things so brought together *Related*.

Thus when I call *Cajus*, *Husband*, or *Whiter*, I intimate some other person, or thing, in both cases, with which I compare him. Any of our *ideas* may be the foundation of *Relation*.

§ 2. Where languages have failed to give co relative names, there the Relation is not so easily taken notice of: as in *Concubine*, which is a Relative name, as well as *Wife*.

§ 3. The *ideas* of Relation may be the same, in those men who have far different *ideas* of the things that are Related. Thus those who have different *ideas*, of *Man*, may agree in that of *Father*.

§ 4. There is no *idea* of any kind, which is not capable of an almost infinite number of considerations, in reference to other things: And therefore this makes no small part of mens words and thoughts. Thus one single man may at once sustain the Relations of *Father*, *Brether*, *Son*, *Husband*, *Friend*, *Subject*, *General*, *European*, *Englishman*, *Islander*, *Master*, *Servant*, *Bigger*, *Less*, &c. to an almost infinite number; he being capable of as many Relations as there can be occasions of comparing him to other things in any manner of agreement, disagreement, or respect whatsoever.

§ 5. The *ideas* of Relations are much *clearer* and more *distinct* than of the things related; because the knowledge of one simple *idea* is oftentimes sufficient to give me the notion of a Relation: But to the knowing of any substantial being, an accurate collection of sundry *ideas* is necessary.

## C H A P. XXVI.

*Of Cause and Effect, and other Relations.*

## § 1.

THE ideas of *Cause* and *Effect*, we get from our observation of the *vicissitude of things*, while we perceive some qualities or substances begin to exist, and that they receive their existence from the due application and operation of other beings: That which *produces*, is the *Cause*; that which is *produced*, the *Effect*. Thus *Fluidity* in wax is the effect of a certain degree of heat, which we observe to be constantly produced by the application of such heat

§ 2. We distinguish the originals of things into two sorts. *First*, When the thing is wholly made new, so that no part thereof did ever exist before, as when a new particle of matter doth begin to exist, which had before no being; it is called *Creation*. *Secondly* When a thing is made up of particles which did all of them before exist, but the thing so constituted of pre existing particles, which altogether make up such a collection of simple ideas; had not any existence before, as this *Man*, this *Egg*, this *Rose*, &c This, when referred to a substance, produced in the ordinary course of nature, by an internal principle, but set on work by some external agent, and working by insensible ways which we perceive not, is called *Generation*. When the Cause is extrinsecal, and the Effect produced by a sensible Separation or Juxta-position of discernible parts, we call it *Making*; and such are all artificial things. When

any simple *idea* is produced, which was not in that subject before, we call it *Alteration*.

§ 3. The denominations of things taken from *Time*, are for the most part only Relations. Thus when it is said that queen *Elizabeth* lived sixty-nine, and reigned forty-five years, no more is meant, than that the duration of her existence was equal to sixty-nine, and of her government to forty five annual revolutions of the sun : And so are all words answering, *How long* ?

*Young* and *Old*, and other words of *Time*, that are thought to stand for positive *ideas*, are indeed Relative ; and intimate a Relation to a certain length of Duration, whereof we have the *idea* in our minds. Thus we call a man *Young* or *Old*, that has lived little or much of that time that men usually attain to. This is evident from our application of these names to other things ; for a *Man* is called *Young* at *Twenty*, but a *Horse* *Old*, &c. The Sun and Stars we call not *Old* at all, because we know not what period God has set to that sort of Beings.

§ 4. There are other *ideas*, that are truly *Relative*, which we signify by names, that are thought *Positive* and *Absolute* ; such as *Great* and *Little*, *Strong* and *Weak* . The things thus denominated are referred to some standards with which we compare them. Thus we call an -pple *Great*, that is bigger than the ordinary sort of those we have been used to. And a *Man* *Weak*, that has not so much strength or power to move as men usually have, or those of his own size.



## C H A P: XXVII.

*Of Identity and Diversity.*

## § 1.

**A**NOTHER occasion the mind takes of comparing, is the very *Being of Things*: When considering a thing as existing at any certain time, or place, and comparing it with itself as existing at any other time, &c. it forms the *ideas* of *Identity* and *Diversity*. When we see any thing in any certain time and place, we are sure, it is that very thing; and can be no other, how like soever it may be in all other respects.

§ 2. We conceiving it impossible, that two things of the same kind should exist together in the same place, we conclude that whatever exists any where at the same time, excludes all of the same kind, and is there itself alone. When therefore we demand whether any thing be the *same*, or no, it refers always to something that existed such a time, in such a place, which it was certain at that instant was the same with itself, and no other.

§ 3. We have *ideas* of three sorts of substances, *First* of *God*. Secondly, *Finite Intelligences*, Thirdly, *Bodies*. *First*, God being Eternal, Unalterable, and every where, concerning his *Identity* there can be no doubt. *Secondly*, Finite Spirits having had their determinate time and place of beginning to exist, the Relation to that time and place will always determine to each its *Identity*, as long as it exists. *Thirdly*, The same will hold of every particle of matter to which

which no addition or subtraction is made. These three exclude not one another out of the same place, yet each exclude those of the same kind out of the same place.

§ 4. The Identity and Diversity of *Modes* and *Relations*, are determined after the same manner that Substances are; only the Actions of Finite Beings, as *Motion* and *Thought*, consisting in Succession, they cannot exist in different times and places as permanent Beings: For no motion or thought considered as at different times can be the same, each part thereof having a different beginning of Existence.

§ 5. From when it is plain, that Existence itself is the *Principium Individuationis*, which determines a Being to a particular time and place, incommunicable to two Beings of the same kind. Thus, suppose an *Atom* existing in a determined time, and place; it is evident that considered in any instant, it is the same with itself, and will be so, as long as its existence continues. The same may be said of two, or more, or any number of particles, whilst they continue together. The *Mass* will be the same however jumbled: But if one atom be taken away, it is not the same mass.

§ 6 In *Vegetables*, the identity depends not on the same mass, and is not applied to the same thing. The reason of this is the difference between an animate body, and mass of matter; *This* being only the cohesion of particles any how united; *The other*, such a disposition and organization of parts, as is fit to receive and distribute nourishment, so as to continue and frame the wood, bark, leaves, &c. (of an  
Oak,

*Oak, for instance) in which consists the vegetable life. That therefore which has such an organization of parts partaking of one common life, continues to be the same Plant, though that life be communicated to new particles of matter vitally united to the living Plant.*

§ 7. The case is not so much different in *Brutes*, but that any one may hence see what makes an *Animal*, and continues it the same.

§ 8. The identity of the same *Man* likewise consists in a *participation of the same continued life, in succeeding particles of matter vitally united to the same organized body.*

§ 9. To understand *Identity* aright, we must consider what *Idea* the word it is applied to stands for. It being one thing to be the same *Substance*, another the same *Man*, and a third the same *Person*.

§ 10. An *Animal*, is a living organized body : And the same animal, is the same continued life communicated to different particles of matter, as they happen successively to be united to that body, and our notion of *Man*, is but of a particular sort of *Animal*.

§ 11. *Person* stands for an intelligent being, that reasons and reflects, and can consider itself the same thing in different times and places ; which it doth by that *Consciousness* that is inseparable from thinking. By this every one is to himself what he calls *Self*, without considering whether that *Self* be continued in the same, or divers substances. In this consists *Personal Identity*, or the sameness of a rational being : And so far as this consciousness extends backward to any past action, or thought, so far reaches the identity of that person. It is the same *Self* now, it was then :

And

And it is by the same *Self*, with this present one, that now reflects on it, that that action was done.

§ 12. ‘ But it is enquired, whether if the same substance, which thinks, be changed, it can be the same person; or remaining the same, it can be different persons? I answer, that cannot be resolved, but by those who know what kind of substances they are that do think, and whether the consciousness of past actions can be transferred from one thinking substance to another. I grant, were the same consciousness the same individual action, it could not: But, it being but a present representation of a past action, why it may not be possible, that that may be represented to the mind to have been, which really never was, will be hard to determine.

‘ As to the second part of the question, whether the same immaterial substance remaining, there may be two distinct persons? All those who hold pre-existence, are evidently of this mind, since they allow the soul to have no remaining consciousness of what it did in that pre-existent state, either wholly separate from body, or informing any other body; and if they should not, it is plain, experience would be against them. So that personal identity reaching no farther than consciousness reaches, a pre-existent spirit not having continued so many ages in a state of silence, must needs make different persons.

§ 13. ‘ And thus we may be able, without any difficulty, to conceive the same person at the resurrection, though in a body not exactly in make or parts the same which he had here, the same con-

sciousness

'sciousness going along with the soul that inhabits it.  
 ' But yet the soul alone, in the change of bodies,  
 ' would scarce to any one, but to him that makes the  
 ' soul the *man*, be enough to make the same *man*.'

§ 14. *Self* is that conscious thinking thing, whatever substance it matters not, which is conscious of pleasure or pain, capable of happiness or misery; and so is concerned for itself, as far as that consciousness extends. That with which the consciousness of this present thinking thing, can join itself, makes the same person, and is one self with it; and so attributes to itself, and owns all the actions of that thing, as its own, as far as that consciousness reaches.

§ 15. This *Personal Identity* is the object of reward and punishment, being that by which every one is concerned for himself. If the *Consciousness* went along with the little finger, when that was cut off, it would be the same self that was just before concerned for the whole body.

§ 16 If the same *Socrates*, waking and sleeping, did not partake of the same consciousness, they would not be the same *Person*. *Socrates* waking, could not be in justice accountable for what *Socrates* sleeping did, no more than one *Twin*, for what his brother *Twin* did, because their outsides were so like, that they could not be distinguished.

§ 17. But suppose I wholly lose the memory of some parts of my life, beyond a possibility of retrieving them, so that I shall never be conscious of them again; am I not the same *Person* that did those actions, though I have now forgot them? I answer, that we must here take notice what the word *I* is applied to, which in this case is the man only: And the same

man being presumed to be the same person, *I* is easily here supposed to stand also for the same person. But if it be possible for the same man, to have distinct incommunicable consciousness at different times, it is past doubt the same man would at different times, make different persons. Which we see is the sense of mankind in the solemnest declaration of their opinions, human laws not punishing the madman for the sober man's actions, nor the sober man for what the madmen did; thereby making them two persons. Thus we say in *English*, such a one is *not himself*, or *is besides himself*, in which phrases it is insinuated, that *Self* is changed, and the *Self same Person* is no longer in that man.

§ 18. But is not a man drunk or sober the same Person? Why else he is punished for the same fact he commits when drunk though he be never afterwards conscious of it? Just as much the same person, as a man that walks, and does other things in his sleep, is the same person, and is as answerable for any mischief he shall do in it. Human laws punish both with a justice suitable to their way of knowledge: Because in these cases they cannot distinguish certainly what is real, and what is counterfeit; and so the ignorance in drunkenness or sleep is not admitted as a plea. For though punishment be annexed to personality, and personality to consciousness; and the drunkard perhaps is not conscious of what he did; yet human judicatures justly punish him, because the fact is proved against him; but want of consciousness cannot be proved for him. But in the great day wherein the *Secrets of all Hearts shall be laid open*, it may be reasonable to think no one shall be made



to answer for what he knows nothing of, but shall receive his doom, his *own Conscience accusing*, or else *excusing him*.

§ 19. 'I am apt enough to think I have, in treating of this subject, made some suppositions that will look strange to some readers, and possibly they are so in themselves: But yet, I think, they are such as are pardonable in this ignorance we are in of the nature of that thinking thing that is in us, and which we look on as *ourselves*. Taking, as we ordinarily do the soul of a man, for an immaterial substance, independent from matter, and indifferent alike to it all, there can from the nature of things be no absurdity at all, to suppose that the same soul may, at different times, be united to different bodies, and with them make up, for that time, one man: As well as we suppose a part of a sheep's body yesterday, should be a part of a man's body to morrow, and in that union make a vital part of *Melibæus* himself, as well as it did of his ram.'

§ 20. To conclude, whatever substance begins to exist, it must during its existence be the same; Whatever compositions of substances begin to exist, during his union of those substances, the concrete must be the same. Whatsoever mode begins to exist, during its existence it is the same: And so if the composition be of distinct substances, and different modes, the same rule holds. Whence it appears that the difficulty or obscurity that has been about this matter, rather arises from *names ill used*, than from any *obscurity in the things* themselves. For whatever makes the specific *Idea*, to which the name is applied, if that *Idea* be steadily kept to, the distinction of any thing into

the *same*, and *divers*, will easily be conceived, and there can arise no doubt concerning it.

+++++

## C H A P. XXVIII.

### *Of other Relations.*

#### § 1.

ALL simple *Ideas*, wherein are parts or degrees, afford an occasion of comparing the subjects wherein they are to one another in respect of those simple *Ideas*. As *Whiter, Sweeter, More, Less, &c.* these depending on the equality and excess of the same simple *Idea*, in several subjects may be called, *Proportional Relations*.

§ 2 Another occasion of comparing things is taken from the circumstances of their origine, as *Father, Son, Brother, &c.* these may be called *Natural Relations*.

§ 3. Sometimes the foundation of considering things, is some act whereby any one comes by a moral right power, or obligation to do something : Such are *General, Captain, Burgher* ; these are *instituted*, and *Voluntary Relations*, and may be distinguished from the *Natural*, in that they are alterable and separable from the persons to whom they sometimes belonged, though neither of the substances so related be destroyed. But natural relations are not alterable, but are as lasting as their subjects.

§ 4. Another relation is the conformity or disagreement of mens voluntary actions to a rule to which they are referred, and by which they are judged of :

These

These may be called *Moral Relations*. It is this conformity or disagreement of our actions to some law (whereby good or evil is drawn on us from the will and power of the law maker, and is what we call *Reward or Punishment*) that renders our actions morally good, or evil.

§ 5. Of these moral *Rules* or *Laws*, there seem to be three sorts with their different enforcements. *First*, the *Divine Law*. Secondly, *Civil Law*. Thirdly, *The Law of Opinion or Reputation*. By their relation to the first, our actions are either *Sins* or *Duties*: To the second, *Criminal* or *Innocent*: To the third, *Virtues* or *Vices*.

§ 6. 1<sup>st</sup>, By the *Divine Law*, I mean that law which God has set to the actions of men, whether promulgated to them by the light of nature, or the voice of Revelation. That God has given a law to mankind, seems undeniable, since he has, *First*, A right to do it, we are his creatures. *Secondly*, Goodness and wisdom to direct our actions to what is best. *Thirdly*, Power to enforce it by reward, and punishment of infinite weight and duration. This is the only true touchstone of moral rectitude, and by which men judge of the most considerable moral good or evil of their actions: that is, whether as duties or sins they are like to procure them happiness or misery from the hands of the Almighty.

§ 7. 2<sup>dly</sup>, The *Civil Law*, is the rule set by the Commonwealth, to the actions of those that belong to it. This law no body over-looks; the rewards and punishments being ready at hand to enforce it, extending to the protecting or taking away of life, Liberty, and estate of those who observe or disobey it.

§ 8. 3<sup>dly</sup>, The law of Opinion or Reputation. *Virtue* and *Vice* are names suppoed every where, to stand for actions in their own nature, Right and Wrong. As far as they are really so applied, they so far are coincident with the divine law. But it is visible that these names in the particular instances of their application, through the several nations and societies of men, are constantly attributed only to such actions as, in each country and society, are in reputation or discredit. So that the measure of what is every where called and esteemed virtue and vice, is the approbation or dislike, praise or blame, which by a tacit consent establishes itself in the societies and tribes of men in the world ; whereby several actions come to find credit or disgrace amongst them, according to the judgment, maxims, or fashions of the place.

§ 9. That this is so, appears hence : That though that passes for Virtue in one place, which is elsewhere accounted Vice ; yet every where *Virtue* and *Praise*, *Vice* and *Blame* go together ; *Virtue* is every where that which is thought praise-worthy : And nothing else but that which has the allowance of public esteem, is called *Virtue*. These have so close an alliance, that they are often called by the same name.

§ 10. It is true, Virtue and Vice do in a great measure every where correspond with the unchangeable rule of Right and Wrong, which the laws of God have established ; because the observation of these laws visibly secures and advances the general good of mankind, and the neglect of them breeds mischief and confusion : And therefore men, without renouncing all sense and reason, and their own interest, could not generally mistake in placing their commendation

commendation and blame on that side that deserved it not. They who think not commendation and disgrace sufficient motives to engage men to accommodate themselves to the opinions and rules of those with whom they converse, seem little skilled in the history of mankind. The greatest part whereof govern themselves chiefly by this *law of Fashion*.

The penalties that attend the breach of God's laws are seldom seriously reflected on, and those that do reflect on them, entertain thoughts of future reconciliation. And for the punishment due from the laws of the commonwealth, men flatter themselves with the hopes of impunity: But no man escapes censure and dislike who offends against fashion; nor is there one of ten thousand stiff and insensible enough, to bear up under the constant dislike and condemnation of his own club.

§ 11. *Morality* then is nothing but a relation to these laws or rules; and these rules being nothing but a collection of several simple *ideas*, the conformity thereto is but so ordering the action, that the simple *ideas* belonging to it, may correspond to those which the law requires. By which we see how moral beings, and notions are founded on, and terminated in the simple *ideas* of sensation and reflection. For example, let us consider the complex *idea* signified by the word *Murder*. First from reflection, we have the *ideas* of *Willing*, *Considering*, *Purposing Malice*. &c. Also of *Life*, *Perception*, and *Self-Motion*. Secondly from Sensation, we have the *ideas* of *man*, and of some action whereby we put an end to that perception and motion in the man, all which simple *ideas* are comprehended in the word *Murder*.

This collection of simple *ideas* being found to agree or disagree with the esteem of the country I have been bred in, and to be held worthy of praise or blame, I call the action *Virtuous* or *Vicious*. If I have the will of a Supreme Invisible Law maker for my rule, then, as I suppose the action commanded or forbidden by *God*, I call it Good or Evil, *Sin* or *Duty* : If I compare it with the Civil Law of my Country, I call it *Lawful* or *Unlawful*, a Crime or no Crime.

§ 12. Moral actions may be considered two ways.

*First*, as they are in themselves a collection of simple *ideas*, in which sense they are positive absolute *ideas*. *Secondly*, As *Good* or *Bad*, or *Indifferent* : In this respect they are *Relative*, it being their conformity or disagreement with some rule that makes them be so. We ought carefully to distinguish between the positive *idea* of the action, and the reference it has to a rule : Both which are commonly comprehended under one name, which often occasions confusion, and misleads the judgment.

§ 13. Thus the taking from another what is his, without his consent, is properly called *Stealing* : But that name being commonly understood to signify also the moral pravity of the action, men are apt to condemn whatever they hear called *Stealing* as an ill action, disagreeing with the rule of Right. And yet the private taking away his sword from a madman to prevent his doing mischief, though it be properly denominated *Stealing*, as the name of such a *mixed Misdemeanour*, yet when compared to the law of *God*, it is



no sin or transgression, though the name *Stealing* ordinarily carries such an intimation with it.

§ 14. It would be infinite to go over all sorts of Relations; I have here mentioned some of the most considerable, and such as may serve to let us see from whence we get our *ideas* of Relations, and wherein they are founded.

\*\*\*\*\*

## C H A P. XXIX.

*Of clear, obscure, distinct, and confused ideas.*

### § 1.

**H**AVING shown the original of our *ideas*, and taken a view of their several sorts: I shall offer some few other considerations concerning them. The first is, that some are *clear*, others *obscure*: Some *distinct*, and others *confused*.

§ 2. Our simple *ideas* are clear, when they are such as the objects themselves from whence they were taken, did in a well-ordered sensation or perception present them. Whilst the memory retains them thus, and can produce them so to the mind when it has occasion to consider them, they are clear *ideas*. Our *complex ideas* are clear when the *ideas* that go to their composition are clear: And the number and order of those simple *ideas*, that are their ingredients, is determinate and certain.

§ 3. The cause of *Obscurity* in simple *ideas* seems to be either dull organs, or slight impressions made by the objects, or a weakness in the memory, not able to retain them as received.

§ 4. A *distinct idea* is that wherein the mind perceives a difference from all other: And a *confused*, is such an one as is not sufficiently distinguishable from another from which it ought to be different. Obscurity is opposed to clearness, confusion to distinctness.

§ 5. This confusion incident to ideas, is only in reference to their names. For every idea a man has being visibly what it is, and distinct from all other *ideas* but itself, that which makes it *confused* is, when it is such that it may as well be called by another name as that which it is expressed by, the difference which keeps the things distinct, and makes some of them to belong rather to the one, and some of them to the other of those names being left out; and so the distinction which was intended to be kept up by these different names is quite lost.

*Confusion* is occasioned chiefly by the following defaults. *First*, When any *complex idea* (for it is *complex ideas* that are most liable to confusion) is made up of too small a number of simple *ideas*, and such as are common to other things: Whereby the differences that make it deserve a different name, are left out. Thus an *idea* of a *Leopard* being conceived only as a spotted beast, is confused; it not being thereby sufficiently distinguished from a *Panther*, and other sorts of beasts that are spotted. Where the *ideas* for which we use different terms, have not a difference answerable to their distinct names, and so cannot be distinguished by them, there it is that they are truly confused.

§ 7. *Secondly*, When the *ideas* are so jumbled together in the complex one, that it is not easily discernible, whether it more belongs to the name given it,  
than

than to any other. We may conceive this confusion by a sort of pictures usually shewn, wherein the colours mark out very odd and unusual figures, and have no discernible order in their position. This, when said to be the picture of a *Man* or *Cæsar*, we reckon confused, because it is not discernible in that state, to belong more to the name *Man* or *Cæsar*, than to the name *Baboon* or *Pompey*. But when a cylindrical mirror rightly placed, hath reduced those irregular lines on the table, into their due order and proportion, then the eye presently sees that it is a *Man* or *Cæsar*; that is, that it belongs to those names, and is sufficiently distinguishable from a *Baboon* or *Pompey*; that is, from the *ideas* signified by those names.

§ 8. *Thirdly*, When any one of our *ideas* signified by a name is uncertain and undetermined. Thus he that puts in, or leaves out an *idea* out of his complex one of *Church* or *Idolatry*, every time that he thinks of either, and holds not steady to any one precise combination of *ideas*, that makes it up, is said to have a confused *idea* of *Church* or *Idolatry*. Confusion always concerns two *ideas*, and those most, which most approach one another. To avoid confusion therefore we ought to examine what other it is in danger to be confounded with, or which it cannot easily be separated from; and that will be found an *idea* belonging to another name, and so should be a different thing, from which yet it is not sufficiently distinct, and so keeps not that difference from that other *idea* which the different name imports.

§ 9. It is to be observed that our *complex ideas* may be very clear and distinct in one part, and very  
obscure



exist, but as they are the certain effects of powers in things without us, ordained by our Maker, to produce in us such sensations : They are real *ideas* in us, whereby we distinguish the qualities that are really in things themselves. Their reality lies in the steady correspondence they have with the distinct constitutions of real beings. But whether they answer to those constitutions as to *Causes* or *Patterns*, it matters not ; it suffices that they are constantly produced by them.

§ 3. *Complex ideas* being arbitrary combinations of *simple ideas* put together, and united under one general name, in forming of which the mind uses its liberty ; we must enquire which of these are real, and which imaginary combinations, and to this I say, that,

§ 4. *First*, Mixed modes and relations, having no other reality than what they have in the minds of men ; nothing else is required to make them real, but a possibility of existing conformable to them. These *ideas* being themselves *Archetypes*, cannot differ from their *Archetypes*, and so cannot be chimerical ; unless any one will jumble together in them inconsistent *ideas*. Those indeed that have names assigned them in any language, must have a conformity to the ordinary signification of the name that is given them, that they may not be thought fantastical.

§ 5. *Secondly*, Our complex *ideas* of Substances being made, in reference to things existing without us, whose representations they are thought, are no farther real, than as they are such combinations of *simple ideas*, as are really united. and coexist in things without us. Those are fantastical which are made

up of several *ideas*, that never were found united, as *Centaur*, &c.



С Н А Р. XXXI.

*Of Ideas Adequate or Inadequate.*

§ 1.

**R**EAL ideas are either *Adequate* or *Inadequate* ; First, *Adequate*, which perfectly represent those Archetypes which the mind supposes them taken from, and which it makes them to stand for. Secondly, *Inadequate*, which are such as do but partially or incompletely represent those Archetypes to which they are referred : Whence it appears,

§ 2. *First*, That all our *simple ideas* are *Adequate*; for they being but the effects of certain powers in things fitted and ordained by God, to produce such sensations in us, they cannot but be correspondent and adequate to such powers, and we are sure they agree to the reality of things.

§ 3. Secondly, Our complex ideas of modes being voluntary collections of simple ideas, which the mind puts together without reference to any real Archetypes, cannot but be Adequate ideas. They are referred to no other pattern, nor made by any original, but the good liking and will of him that makes the combination. If indeed one would confirm his ideas, to those which are formed by another person, they may be wrong or Inadequate, because they agree not to that which the mind designs to be their archetype



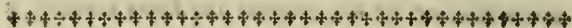
and pattern. In which respect only, any *ideas* of modes can be wrong, imperfect, or inadequate.

§ 4. *Thirdly*, Our *ideas of Substances* have in the mind a double reference: *First*, They are sometimes referred to a supposed real essence, of each species of things. *Secondly*, They are designed for representations in the mind of things that do exist, by *ideas* discoverable in them: In both which respects they are *Inadequate*.

*First*, If the names of Substances stand for things, as supposed to have certain real essences, whereby they are of this or that species, (of which real essences men are wholly ignorant and know nothing) it plainly follows that the *ideas* they have in their minds, being referred to real essences, as *Archetypes* which are unknown, they must be so far from being Adequate, that they cannot be supposed to be any representation of them at all. Our complex *ideas* of Substances are, as have been shown, nothing but certain collections of simple *ideas* that have been observed, or supposed constantly to exist together. But such a complex *idea* cannot be the real essence of any Substance: For then the properties we discover in it would be deducible from it, and their necessary connection with it be known, as all the properties of a *Triangle* depend on, and are deducible from the complex *idea* of *Three Lines including a space*: But it is certain that in our complex *ideas* of Substances, are not contained such *ideas* on which all the other qualities that are to be found in them depend.

§ 5. *Secondly*, Those that take their *ideas* of Substances from their sensible qualities, cannot form Adequate *ideas* of them: Because their qualities and

powers are so various, that no man's complex *idea* can contain them all. Most of our simple *ideas*, whereof our complex ones of Substances do consist, are powers which being relations to other Substances; we cannot be sure we know all the powers, till we have tried what changes they are fitted to give and receive from other Substances, in their several ways of application: Which being not possible to be tried upon one body, much less upon all, it is impossible we should have Adequate *ideas* of any Substance, made of a collection of all its properties.



# C H A P. XXXII.

## *Of True and False Ideas.*

### § 1.

**T**RUTH and *Falshood* in propriety of speech belong only to propositions; and when *ideas* are termed *True* or *False*, there is some secret or tacit proposition, which is the foundation of that denomination. Our *ideas* being nothing but *Appearances* or *Perceptions* in the mind, can in strictness of speech no more be said to be true or false, than single names of things can be said to be true or false. The *idea* of *Centaur* has no more falshood in it, when it appears in our minds, than the name *Centaur* when it is pronounced or writ on paper. For truth or falseshood lying always in some affirmation or negation, our *ideas* are not capable, any of them, of being false, till the mind passes some judgment on them; that is, affirms or denies something of them. In a *metaphysical* sense they

they may be said to be true, that is, to be really such as they exist; though in things called true, even in that sense, there is perhaps a secret reference to our *ideas*, looked upon as the standards of that truth; which amounts to a *mental proposition*.

§ 2. When the mind refers any of its *ideas* to any thing extraneous to it, they are then *capable of being true or false*: Because in such a reference the mind makes a tacit supposition of their conformity to that thing; which supposition, as it is true or false, so the *ideas* themselves come to be denominated. This happens in these cases: *First*, When the mind supposes its *idea*, conformable to that in other mens minds; called by the same name, such as that of *Justice*, *Virtue*, &c.

*Secondly*, When the mind supposes any *idea* conformable to some real existence. Thus that of *Man* is true, that of *Centaur* false, the one having a conformity to what has really existed; the other not. *Thirdly*, When the mind refers any of its *ideas* to that real constitution, and essence of any thing whereon all its properties depend: And thus the greatest part, if not all our *ideas of Substances*, are false.

§ 3. As to the *First*, When we judge of our *ideas* by their conformity to those of other men, they may be any of them false. But simple *ideas* are least liable to be so mistaken; we seldom mistake *Green* for *Blue*, or *Bitter* for *Sweet*; much less do we confound the names belonging to different senses, and call a *Colour* by the name of a *Taste*. Complex *ideas* are much more liable to falsehood in this particular: And those of *Mixed Modes* more than *Substances*. Because in *Substances* their sensible qualities serve for the most part to distinguish them clearly: But in *Mixed Modes*

we are more uncertain, and we may call that *Justice*, which ought to be called by another name. *The reason of this is*, that the abstract *ideas* of Mixed Modes, being mens voluntary combinations of such a precise collection of simple *ideas*, we have nothing else to refer our *ideas* of Mixed Modes as standards to; but the *ideas* of those who are thought to use names in their proper significations: And so as our *ideas* conform or differ from them, they pass for true or false.

§ 4. As to the *Second*, *When we refer our ideas to the real existence of things* none can be termed false, but our complex *ideas* of Substances.

§ 5. For our simple *ideas* being nothing but perceptions in us answerable to certain powers in external objects, their truth consists in nothing but such appearances, as are produced in us suitable to those powers: Neither do they become liable to the imputation of falshood, whether we judge these *ideas* to be in the things themselves, or no. For God having set them as marks of distinguishing things, that we may be able to discern one thing from another, and thereby chuse them as we have occasion; it alters not the nature of our simple *ideas*, whether we think the *idea* of *Blue* (for instance) to be in the *Violet* itself, or in the mind only: And it is equally from that appearance to be denominated *Blue*, whether it be that real colour, or only a peculiar texture in it, that causes in us that *idea*: Since the name *Blue* notes properly nothing but that mark of distinction, that is in a *Violet*, discernible only by our eyes, whatever it consists in.

Neither would our simple *ideas* be *false*, if by the different structure of our organs it were so ordered  
that

that the same object should produce in several mens minds different ideas. For this could never be known, since objects would operate constantly after the same manner. It is most probable nevertheless, that the ideas produced by the same objects in different mens minds, are very near and undiscernibly like. Names of simple ideas may be misapplied, as a man ignorant in the *English* tongue may call *Purple*, *Scarlet*: But this makes no falshood in the ideas.

§ 6. *Complex ideas of modes cannot be false in reference to the essence of any thing really existing; because they have no reference to any pattern existing, or made by nature.*

§ 7. *Our complex ideas of Substances, being all referred to patterns in things themselves, may be false. They are so, First, When looked upon as representations of the unknown essences of things. Secondly, When they put together simple ideas which, in the real existence of things, have no union: As in Centaur. Thirdly, When from any collection of simple ideas, that do always exist together, there is separated by a direct negation any one simple idea, which is constantly joined with them. Thus, if from extension, solidity, fixedness, malleableness, fusibility, &c we remove the colour observed in Gold. If this idea be only left out of the complex one of Gold, it is to be looked on as an inadequate and imperfect, rather than a false one: Since, though it contains not all the simple ideas, that are united in nature: Yet it puts none together, but what do really exist together.*

§ 8. Upon the whole, I think that our ideas as they are considered by the mind, either in reference to the proper signification of their names, or in re-



ference to the reality of things, may more properly be called *Right* or *Wrong ideas*, according as they agree or disagree to those patterns to which they are referred. The *ideas* that are in mens minds simply considered, cannot be wrong, unless *complex ideas*, wherein inconsistent parts are jumbled together. All other *ideas* are in themselves right, and the knowledge about them right, and true knowledge. But when we come to refer them to any patterns, or archetypes, then they are capable of being wrong, as far as they disagree with such archetypes.

\*\*\*\*\*

### C H A P. XXXIII.

#### *Of the Association of Ideas.*

##### § 1.

THERE is scarce any one that does not observe something that seems odd to him, and is in itself really extravagant in the opinions, reasonings, and actions of other men. The least flaw of this kind, if at all different from his own, every one is quick-sighted enough to espy, and forward to condemn in another, though he be guilty of much greater unreasonableness in his own tenets and conduct, which he never perceives, and will very hardly be convinced of.

§ 2. This sort of unreasonableness is usually imputed to Education and Prejudice, and for the most part truly enough; though that reaches not the bottom of the disease, nor shows distinctly enough whence it rises, or wherein it lies. Education is often rightly assigned for the cause; and prejudice is a  
good



good general name for the thing itself; but yet I think he ought to look a little farther who would trace it to the root it springs from, and so explain it, as to show whence this flaw has its original in very sober and rational minds, and wherein it consists. For this being a weakness to which all men are liable, and a taint which universally infects mankind, the greater care should be taken to lay it open.

§ 3 Some of our *ideas* have a natural correspondence and connexion one with another: It is the office and excellency of our reason to trace these, and hold them together in that union and correspondence which is founded in their peculiar beings. Besides this, there is another connection of *ideas* wholly owing to chance or custom: *Ideas* that in themselves are not at all of kin, come to be so united in some mens minds, that it is very hard to separate them; they always keep company, and the one no sooner comes into the understanding, but its associate appears with it; and if they are more than two, the whole gang always inseparably show themselves together. This strong combination of *ideas* not allied by nature, the mind makes in itself either voluntarily, or by chance: And hence it comes in different men to be very different, according to their different *Inclinations, Educations, Interests, &c.* Custom settles habits of Thinking in the Understanding as well as of Determining in the Will, and of motion in the Body; all which seem to be but trains of motion in the Animal Spirits, which once set a going, continue on in the same steps they have been used to; which by often trading are worn into a smooth path, and the motion in it becomes easy, and, as it were, natural. As far

far as we can comprehend Thinking, thus *ideas* seem to be produced in our minds; or if they are not, this may serve to explain their following one another in an habitual train, when once they are put into that track, as well as it does to explain such motions of the Body.

§ 4 This connexion in our minds of *ideas* in themselves loose and independent one of another, is of so great force to set us awry in our actions, as well moral as natural, passions, reasonings, and notions themselves, that perhaps there is not any one thing that deserves more to be looked after. Thus the *ideas* of *Goblins* and *Sprights* have really no more to do with Darkn<sup>ess</sup> than Light: yet let but a foolish Maid inculcate these often on the mind of a Child, and raise them there together, possibly he shall never be able to separate them again so long as he lives; but Darkn<sup>ess</sup> shall ever afterwards bring with it those frightful *ideas*. A man has suffered pain or sickness in any place; he saw his friend die in such a room; though these have in nature nothing to do one with another, yet when the *idea* of the *place* occurs to his mind, it brings that of the Pain and Displeasure with it, he confounds them in his mind, and can as little bear the one as the other.

§ 5. *Intellectual Habits* and Defects this way contracted are not less frequent and powerful, though less observed. Let the *ideas* of *Being* and *Matter* be strongly joined either by Education or much Thought, whilst these are still combined in the mind, what notions, what reasonings will there be about separate Spirits? Let Custom from the very Childhood have joined Figure and Shape to the *idea* of  
of

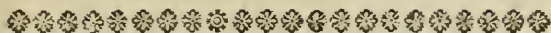
of God, and what absurdities will that mind be liable to about the Deity? Let the *idea* of *Infallibility* be joined to any person, and these two constantly together possess the mind, and then one Body in two places at once, shall be swallowed for a certain truth, whenever that imagined Infallible Person dictates and demands assent without inquiry.

§ 6. Some such wrong combinations of *ideas* will be found to establish the irreconcilable opposition between different sects of philosophy and religion: For we cannot imagine every one of their followers to impose wilfully on himself, and knowingly refuse truth offered by plain Reason. Interest, though it does a great deal in the case, yet cannot be thought to work whole societies of men to so universal a perverseness, as that every one of them should knowingly maintain falsehood; Some at least must be allowed to do what all pretend to; *i. e.* to pursue truth sincerely. That therefore which captivates their reason, and leads men of sincerity blindfold from common sense, will, when examined, be found to be, what we are speaking of: Some independent *ideas*, are by education, custom, and the constant din of their party so coupled in their minds, that they always appear there together, and they can no more separate them in their thoughts, than if they were but one *idea*; and they operate as if they were so. This gives sense to jargon, demonstration to absurdities, and consistency to nonsense, and is the foundation of the greatest, I had almost said, of all the errors in the world: Or, if it does not reach so far, it is at least the most dangerous one, since so far as it obtains it hinders men from seeing and examining. The confusion

fusion of two different *ideas* which a customary connexion of them in their minds hath to them in effect made but one, cannot but fill mens heads with false views, and their reasonings with false consequences.

§ 7. Having thus given an account of the *Original Sorts* and *Extent* of our *ideas*, which are the instruments or materials of our knowledge, I should immediately proceed to show, what use the understanding makes of them, and what knowledge we have by them. But, upon a nearer approach, I find that there is so close a connexion between *ideas* and *words*; and our abstract *ideas* and general *words* have so constant a relation one to another, that it is impossible to speak clearly and distinctly of our knowledge, which all consists in propositions, without considering first, the Nature, Use, and Signification of Language, which therefore must be the business of the next Book.





## B O O K III.

## C H A P. I.

*Of Words or Language in General.*

## § 1.

GOD having designed man for a sociable creature, made him not only with an inclination, and under a necessity to have fellowship with those of his own kind, but furnished him also with *Language*, which was to be the great instrument and common tie of society. Man therefore had by nature his organs so fashioned, as to be *fit to frame articulate sounds*, which we call Words.

§ 2. But besides articulate sounds (which birds may be taught to imitate) it was further necessary that he should be *able to use these sounds as signs of internal Conceptions*, and make them stand as marks of the *ideas* in his mind, whereby they might be made known to others.

§ 3. But neither is it enough for the perfection of language, that sounds can be made signs of *ideas*, unless these can be made use of, so as *to comprehend several particular things*; for the multiplication of words would have perplexed their use, had every particular thing need of a distinct name to be signified by. To remedy this inconvenience, Language had yet a farther improvement in the use of *General Terms*, whereby one word was made to mark a multitude

titude of particular existences, which advantageous use of sounds was obtained only by the difference of the *ideas* they were made signs of. Those names becoming *general*, which are made to stand for *general ideas*; and those remaining *particular*, where the *ideas* they are used for are *particular*. There are other words which signify the *want* or *absence* of *ideas*, as *Ignorance*, *Barrenness*, &c. which relate to *positive ideas*, and signify their absence.

§ 4. It is observable that the words which stand for Actions and Notions, quite removed from sense, are borrowed from sensible *ideas*, v. g. to Imagine, Apprehend, Comprehend, Understand, Adhere, Conceive, Instil, Digest, Disturbance, Tranquillity, &c. which are all taken from the Operations of Things Sensible, and applied to *modes of Thinking*. *Spirit* in its primary signification is no more than breath; *Angel* a messenger. By which we may guess what kind of notions they were, and whence derived; which filled the minds of the first beginners of languages, and how nature, even in the naming of things unawares, suggested to men the originals of all their knowledge: Whilst to give names that might make known to others any operations they felt in themselves, or any other *ideas*, that came not under their senses, they were fain to borrow words from the ordinary and known *ideas* of *Sensation*.

§ 5. The better to understand the *Use* and *Force* of Language, as subservient to Knowledge, it will be convenient to consider.

*First To what it is that Names in the use of Language are immediately applied.*

*Secondly, Since all (except proper names) are Ge-*  
I
neral,



neral, and so stand not for this or that single thing, but for *Sorts* and *Ranks* : It will be necessary to consider what those sorts and kinds of things are; wherein they consist, and how they come to be made. This shall be considered in the following chapters.

\*\*\*\*\*

## CH A P. II.

### *Of the Signification of Words.*

#### § 1.

**M**AN, though he have great variety of thoughts, yet are they all within his own breast, invisible and hidden from others, nor can of themselves be made to appear. It was necessary therefore, for the comfort and advantage of Society, that man should find out some *External Signs*, whereby those invisible *ideas* might be made known to others. For which purpose nothing was so fit either for plenty or quickness, as those *Articulate Sounds* he found himself able to make. Hence *words* came to be made use of by men, as signs of their *ideas* : Not upon the account of any *natural* connexion between articulate sounds, and certain *ideas* ; for then there would be but one Language amongst all men : but by a voluntary imposition, whereby such a word is made *arbitrarily* the mark of such an *idea*. The use then of words, is to be sensible marks of our *ideas* ; and the *ideas* they stand for, are their *proper* and *immediate Signification* : In which *they stand for nothing more but the ideas in the mind of him that uses them*. For when a man speaks to another, it is that he may

be understood ; that is, that his *sounds* may make known his *ideas* to the hearer.

§ 2. Words being voluntary Signs, cannot be imposed on things we know not : This would be to make them signs of nothing, sounds without significations. A man cannot make his words the signs either of *Qualities* in things, or of *Conceptions* in the mind of another, whereof he has no *ideas* in his own.

§ 3. *Words in all mens mouths* (that speak with any meaning) *stand for the ideas which those that use them have*, and which they would express by them. Thus a *Child* that takes notice of nothing more in the metal he hears called *Gold*, than the *Yellow Colour*, calls the same colour in a Peacock's tail *Gold*. Another, that hath better observed, adds to shining Yellow, great Weight ; and then the sound *Gold* stands, when he uses it, for a complex *idea* of a shining Yellow, and very weighty Substance.

§ 4. Though words signify properly nothing but the *ideas* in mens minds, yet they are in their thoughts secretly referred to *two* other things.

First, *They suppose their words to be marks of ideas, in the minds of other men with whom they communicate* ; else they could not discourse intelligibly with one another : In this case men stand not to examine whether their *ideas* and those of other men be the same ; they think it enough that they use the word in the common acceptation of that Language.

§ 5. Secondly, *They suppose their words to stand also for the reality of things.*

§ 6. Words then being immediately the signs of mens *ideas*, whereby they express their thoughts and imaginations to others, *there arises by constant use such*  
a con-

a connexion between certain sounds and the ideas they stand for ; that the names heard almost as readily excite certain *ideas*, as if the objects themselves were present to the senses.

§ 7. And because we examine not precisely the signification of words, we often in attentive consideration *set our thoughts more on words than things* : Nay, some (because we often learn words before we know the *ideas* they stand for) speak several words no otherwise than *Parrots* do, without any meaning at all. But so far as words are of use and signification, so far there is a constant connexion between the *sound* and *idea* ; and a designation that the one stand for the other ; without which application of them, they are nothing but insignificant noise.

§ 8. Since then words signify only mens peculiar *ideas*, and that by an *arbitrary imposition*, it follows that every man has an inviolable liberty to make words stand for what *ideas* he pleases. It is true, common use by a tacit consent appropriates certain sounds to certain *ideas* in all Languages ; which so far limits the signification of each sound, that unless a man applies it to the same *ideas*, he cannot *speak properly* : And unless a man's words excite the same *ideas* in the hearer, which he makes them stand for in speaking, he cannot *speak intelligibly*. But whatever be the consequence of any man's use, of words, different either from their public use, or that of the persons to whom he addresses them, this is certain, their signification in his use of them is limited to his *ideas*, and they can be signs of nothing else.

## C H A P. III.

*Of General Terms.*

## § 1.

ALL things that exist being Particulars, it might be expected that words should be so too in their signification : But we find it quite contrary ; for most of the words that make all languages are *General Terms*. This is the effect of Reason and Necessity ; for,

§ 2. First, *It is impossible that every particular thing should have a distinct peculiar name*, because it is impossible to have distinct *ideas* of every particular thing ; to retain its name, with its peculiar appropriation to that *idea*.

§ 3 Secondly, *It would be useless*, unless all could be supposed to have the same *ideas* in their minds. For names applied to particular things, whereof I alone have the *ideas* in my mind, could not be significant or intelligible to another, who is not acquainted with all those particular things which had fallen under my notice.

§ 4. Thirdly, *It would be of no great use for the Improvement of Knowledge* : Which, though founded in particular things, enlarges itself by general views ; to which things reduced into sorts under general names, are properly subservient. In things where we have occasion to consider and discourse of *Individuals*, and particulars, we use *proper* names : As in *Persons*, *Countries*, *Cities*, *Rivers*, *Mountains*, &c. Thus we  
see

see that Jockeys have particular names for their horses; because they often have occasion to mention this or that particular horse when he is out of sight.

§ 5. The next thing to be considered, is how *General Words come to be made*. Words become general by being made signs of *General Ideas*: *Ideas* become general by separating from them, the circumstances of Time, Place, or any other *ideas* that may determine them to this or that particular existence. By this way of *Abstraction*, they become capable of representing more Individuals, than one: Each of which having a conformity to that abstract *idea*, is of that sort.

§ 6. But it may not be amiss to trace our notions and names, from their beginning; and observe by what degrees we proceed and enlarge our *ideas*, from our first infancy. It is evident that the first *ideas* *Children* get, are only particular, as of the *Nurse* or *Mother*, and the names they give them are confined to these Individuals. Afterwards observing that there are a great many other things in the world, that resemble them in shape, and other qualities, they frame an *idea* which they find those many particulars do partake in; to that they give with others the name *Man* for example; in this they make nothing new, but only leave out of the complex *idea* they had of *Peter*, *James*, *Mary*, &c. that which is peculiar to each, and retain only what is common to all. And thus they come to have a general name, and a general *idea*.

§ 7. By the same method they advance to more general names and notions. For observing several things that differ from their *idea* of *Man*, and cannot therefore be comprehended under that name, to agree



with Man in some certain qualities, by retaining only those qualities, and uniting them into one *idea*, they have another more general *idea*, to which giving a name they make a *term* of a more comprehensive extension. Thus by leaving out the shape, and some other properties signified by the name *Man*, and retaining only a body with life, sense, and spontaneous motion; we form the *idea*, signified by the name *Animal*. By the same way the mind proceeds to *Body*, *Substance*, and at last, to *Being*, *Thing*. and such universal Terms, which stand for any *ideas* whatsoever. Hence we see that the whole mystery of *Genus* and *Species*, is nothing else but *abstract ideas* more or less comprehensive, with *names* annexed to them.

§ 8. This shews us the reason why in defining words, *we make use of the Genus*: Namely to save the labour of enumerating the several simple *ideas*, which the next general term stands for. ‘But though defining by *Genus*, and *differentia*, be the shortest way; yet, I think, it may be doubted whether it be the best. This I am sure it is not the only, and is not absolutely necessary.’ From what has been said it is plain that *General* and *Universal* belong not to the *real* existence of things; but *are inventions of the Understanding* made by it for its own use, and concern only *signs*, either *words* or *ideas*.

§ 9. It must be considered in the next place, *what kind of signification it is that general words have*. It is evident that they do not barely signify one particular thing: For then they would not be general terms, but proper names: Neither do they signify a *Plurality*; for then *Man* and *Men* would signify the same thing; but that which they signify, is a *sort of* things,



things, and this they do, by being made a sign of an *abstract idea* in the mind, to which *idea*, as things existing are found to agree, so they come to be ranked under that name, or to be of that sort. The *Essences then of the sorts or species* of things, are nothing but these *abstract ideas*.

§ 10. It is not denied here that Nature makes things alike, and so lays the foundation of this sorting and classing: But the *sorts or species* themselves are the *workmanship of Human Understanding*: So that every distinct *abstract idea*, is a distinct *Essence*, and the names that stand for such distinct *ideas*, are the names of things essentially different. Thus *Oval*, *Circle*, *Rain* and *Snow* are essentially different. To make this clearer, it may not be amiss to consider the *several significations of the word Essence*.

§ 11. *First*, It may be taken for the *very being of any thing whereby it is, what it is*; thus the real internal, (but unknown) constitution in *Substances*, may be called their *Essence*. This is the proper signification of the word.

§ 12. *Secondly*, In the *Schools* the word *Essence* has been almost wholly applied to the artificial constitution of *Genus* and *Species*; it is true, there is ordinarily supposed a real constitution of the sorts of things: And it is past doubt there must be some real constitution, on which any collection of *simple ideas*, coexisting, must depend. But it being evident that things are ranked into sorts, under names only as they agree to certain *abstract ideas*, to which we have annexed those names, the essence of each *Genus* or *Species*, is nothing but the *abstract idea*, which  
the

the name stands for ; this the word *Essence* imports in its most familiar use.

§ 13. These two sorts of *Essence* may not unfitly be termed the one *Real*, the other *Nominal*. *Between the nominal Essence and the name, there is so near a connexion, that the name of any sort of things, cannot be attributed to any particular being, but what has the Essence whereby it answers that abstract idea, whereof that name is the sign.*

§ 14. Concerning the real Essences of corporeal Substances, there are two opinions.

*First*, Some using the word *Essence* for they know not what, suppose a certain number of those *Essences*, according to which, all natural things are made, and of which they equally partake, and do become of this or of that Species.

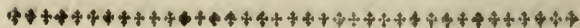
*Secondly*, Others look on all natural things to have a real, but unknown constitution of their insensible parts, from whence flow their sensible qualities, which serve us to distinguish them one from another ; and according to which we rank them into sorts under common denominations. The former supposition seems irreconcilable with the frequent production of monsters, in all the species of Animals : Since it is impossible that two things partaking of the same real *Essence*, should have different *Properties*. But were there no other reason against it ; yet *the supposition of Essences which cannot be known*, and yet the making them to be that which distinguisheth the species of things, is so wholly *useless* and unserviceable to any part of *Knowledge*, that that alone were sufficient to make us lay it by.

§ 15. We may further observe that the nominal, and *real* Essences of *simple ideas* and *modes*, are always the same: But in *Substances* always quite different. Thus a figure including a space between three lines, is the real as well as nominal Essence of a triangle; it being that foundation from which all its properties flow, and to which they are inseparably annexed; but it is far otherwise in *Gold* or any other sort of *Substance*; it is the real constitution of its insensible parts, on which depend all those Properties that are to be found in it; which constitution since we know not, nor have any particular *idea* of, we can have no name that is the sign of it. But yet it is its *Colour*, *Weight*, *Fusibility*, and *Fixedness*, &c. which makes it to be *Gold*, or gives it a right to that name; which is therefore its *nominal Essence*, since nothing can be called *Gold* but what has a conformity to that abstract complex *idea*, to which that name is annexed.

§ 16. That Essences are but abstract *ideas*, may farther appear by their being held *ingenerable* and *incorruptible*. This cannot be true of the real constitution of things. All things in Nature (save the *Author* of it) are liable to change: Their *real Essences* and Constitutions are destroyed and perish: But as they are *ideas* established in the mind, they remain immutable. For whatever becomes of *Alexander* or *Bucephalus*, the *ideas* of man and horse remain the same. By these means the Essence of *Species* rests safe and entire, without the existence of one *Individual* of that kind.

§ 17. It is evident then that this doctrine of the immutability of Essences proves them to be only abstract

abstract *ideas*, and is founded on the relation established between them and certain sounds, as signs of them, and will always be true, as long as the same name can have the same signification.



## CH A P. IV.

### *Of the Names of Simple Ideas.*

#### § 1.

**W**ORDS though they signify nothing immediately, but the *ideas* in the mind of the Speaker; yet we shall find that the names of simple *Ideas*, mixed *Modes*, and natural *Substances* have each of them something peculiar. And,

§ 2. *First*, the names of *simple ideas* and *substances*, with the abstract *Ideas* in the Mind intimate some real *Existence*, from which was derived their original pattern: But the names of *mixed Modes* terminate in the *idea* that is in the Mind.

§ 3. *Secondly*. The names of *simple Ideas* and *Modes* signify the real as well as nominal *Essences* of their species: The names of *substances* signify rarely, if ever any thing, but barely the nominal *Essences* of those species.

§ 4. *Thirdly*. The names of *simple Ideas* are not capable of *Definitions*; those of *complex Ideas* are: The reason of which I shall show from the nature of our *ideas*, and the signification of *words*.

§ 5. It is agreed that a *Definition* is nothing else but the showing the meaning of one word, by several other, *not synonymous Terms*. The meaning of words being only the *ideas* they are made to stand for;

for ; the meaning of any term is then shōwed, or the word defined, when by other words the *idea* it is made the sign of, is. as it were, represented or set before the view of another, and thus its signification ascertained.

§ 6. The names then of *simple ideas* are incapable of being defined, because the several terms of a Definition signifying several *ideas*, they can altogether by no means represent an *idea* which has no composition at all, and therefore a Definition, which is but the showing of the meaning of one word, by several others not signifying each the same thing, can in the names of simple *ideas* have no place.

§ 7. The not observing this difference in our *ideas*, has occasioned those trifling Definitions which are given us of some simple *ideas* : Such as is that of *motion*, viz. *The Act of a Being in Power, as far forth as in Power.* The Atomists, who define Motion to be a *Passage from one place to another*, what do they more than put one synonymous word for another ? For what is *Passage* other than a Motion ? Nor will the successive application of the parts of the superficies of one body to those of another, which the *Cartesians* give us, prove a much better definition of Motion when well examined.

§ 8. *The Act of Perspicuous, as far forth as perspicuous*, is another Peripaterick definition of a simple *idea*, which it is certain can never make the meaning of the word *Light*, which it pretends to define, understood by a blind man. And when the *Cartesians* tell us, that Light is a great number of little globules striking briskly on the bottom of the eye ; these  
words

words would never make the *idea* the word Light stands for, known to a man that had it not before.

§ 9. *Simple ideas* then can only be got by the *impressions* objects make on our minds. by the proper *In-letts* appointed to each sort. If they are not received this way, all the words in the world will never be able to produce in us the ideas they stand for. Words being sounds, can produce in us no other simple ideas than of those very sounds, nor excite any in us, but by that voluntary connexion which they have with some ideas which common use has made them signs of: And therefore he that has not before received into his mind by the proper *In-lett* the simple idea, which any word stands for, can never come to know the signification of that word, by any other words or sounds whatsoever.

§ 10. But in *complex ideas* which consist of several simple ones, the case is quite otherwise; for words standing for those several ideas that make up the composition, may imprint complex ideas in the mind, that never were there before, and so make their names be understood. In them definitions take place. Thus the word *Rainbow*, to one who knew all those colours, but yet had never seen that *Phænomenon*, might, by enumerating the *Figure*, *Largeness*, *Position*, and *Order* of the Colours, be so well defined, that it might be perfectly understood.

§ 11. 'Fourthly, This farther may be observed, ' concerning *simple ideas* and their names, that they ' have but few *ascents* in *linea prædicamentali*, (as ' they call it) from the lowest *Species* to the *summum* ' *Genus*. The reason whereof is, that the lowest ' species being but one simple idea, nothing can be



' left out of it, that so the difference being taken away, it may agree with some other thing in one *idea* common to them both; which, having one name, is the *Genus* of the other two.'

§ 12. *Fifthly*, The names of simple *Ideas*, *Substances*, and *mixed Modes* have also this difference, that those of *mixed Modes* stand for *ideas* perfectly arbitrary: Those of *Substances* are not perfectly so, but refer to a pattern, though with some latitude; and those of simple *ideas* are perfectly taken from the existence of things, and are not arbitrary at all.

The names of *simple modes* differ little from those of *simple ideas*.

\*\*\*\*\*

## C H A P. V.

*Of the Names of Mixed Modes and Relations.*

### § 1.

THE names of *mixed Modes* being general, stand for *abstract ideas* in the mind, as other general names do; but they have something peculiar which may deserve our attention.

§ 2. And *First*, the *ideas* they stand for, or if you please the essences of the several species of *mixed modes*, are made by the understanding; wherein they differ from those of *simple ideas*.

§ 3. *Secondly*, They are made arbitrarily, without patterns, or reference to any real existence, wherein they differ from those of *Substances*. The mind unites and retains certain collections, as so many distinct specifick *ideas*, whilst other combinations that

as often in nature occur, and are as plainly suggested by outward things, pass neglected without particular names, or specifications.

§ 4. The mind *in forming those complex ideas*, makes no new *idea*, but only puts together those which it had before, wherein it does *three* things. *First*, It chuses a certain number. *Secondly*, It gives them connexion, and combines them into one *idea*. *Thirdly*, It ties them together by a name; all this may be done before any one individual of that species of Modes ever existed: As the *ideas* of *Sacrilege* or *Adultery* might be framed, before either of them was committed; and we cannot doubt but law-makers have often made laws about species of Actions, which were only the creatures of their own understanding.

§ 5. But though *mixed Modes* depend on the mind, and are made arbitrarily; yet they *are not made at random*, and jumbled together without any reason at all, but are always made for the convenience of communication, which is the chief end of language, and therefore such combinations are only made, as men have frequent occasion to mention. Thus men having joined to the *idea* of killing the *idea* of *Father* and *Mother*, and so made a distinct species from the killing a man's *Son* or *Neighbour*, because of the different heinousness of the crime, and the distinct punishment due to it, found it necessary to mention it by a distinct name, which is the end of making that distinct combination.

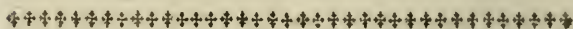
§ 6. In *mixed Modes*, it is the *name* that seems to preserve their Essences, and to give them their lasting duration. ' For the connexion between the loose  
' parts of those complex *ideas*, being made by the  
' mind,

‘ mind, this union, which has no particular foundation in nature, would cease again, were there not something that did, as it were, hold it together, and keep the parts from scattering.’ Though therefore the collection of *ideas* is made by the mind, yet the name is as it were the *Knot* which ties them fast together : Hence we seldom take any other for distinct species of *mixed Modes*, but such as are set out by names. We must observe that the names of *mixed Modes* always signify the real Essences of their species, which being nothing but the abstract complex *ideas*, and not referred to the real existence of things ; there is no supposition of any thing more signified by any name of a *mixed Mode*, but barely that *complex idea* the mind itself has formed : Which when the mind has formed, is all it would express by it, and is that on which all the properties of the *species* depend, and from which alone they flow ; and so in these the *real* and *nominal* Essence is the same.

§ 7. This also shows the reason *why the names of mixed Modes are commonly got, before the ideas they stand for are perfectly known* : Because there being no species of these ordinarily taken notice of, but such as have names, and those species being *complex ideas* made arbitrarily by the mind, it is convenient, if not necessary, to know the names, before we learn the *complex ideas* ; unless a man will fill his head with a company of abstract *complex ideas*, which others having no names for, he has nothing to do with, but to lay by, and forget again. In the beginning of languages it was necessary to have the *idea* before one gave it the *name* ; and so it is still, where a *new complex idea* is to be made, and a name given it. In

*simple ideas* and *substances*, I grant it is otherwise; which being such *ideas* as have real existence and union in nature, the *ideas* or names are got, one before the other, as it happens.

§ 8. What has been said here of *mixed Modes*, is with very little difference applicable to *Relations* also; which since every man himself may observe, I may spare myself the pains to enlarge on.



## CH A P. VI.

### *Of the Names of Substances.*

#### § 1.

THE common names of *Substances* stand for *sorts* as well as other general terms; that is, for such *complex ideas*, wherein several particular *Substances* do, or might agree, by virtue of which they are capable to be comprehended in one common conception, and be signified by one name; I say, *do* or *might agree*, for though there be but one *Sun*, existing, yet the *idea* of it being abstracted, is as much a *sort*, as if there were as many *suns* as there are *stars*.

§ 2. The measure and boundary of each *sort* whereby it is constituted that *particular sort*, and distinguished from others, is what we call it *Essence*; which is nothing but that *abstract idea* to which that name is annexed, so that every thing contained in that *idea*, is essential to that *sort*, This I call *Nominal Essence*, to distinguish it from that real constitution of *substances*, on which this *Nominal Essence*, and all the

the properties of that sort depend, and may be called its *real Effence*: Thus the *nominal Effence* of *Gold* is that *complex idea* the word *Gold* stands for, let it be for instance a *Body*, *Yellow*, *Weighty*, *Malleable*, *Fusible*, and *Fixed*: But its *real Effence* is the constitution of its insensible parts, on which those qualities, and all its other properties depend; which is wholly unknown to us.

§ 3. That *Effence*, in the ordinary use of the word relates to *Sorts*, appears from hence, that if you take away the abstract *ideas* by which we sort Individuals, and rank them under common names, then the thought of any thing essential to any of them instantly vanishes: We have no notion of the one without the other, which plainly shows their Relation. No property is thought essential to any Individual whatsoever, till the mind refers it to some sort or *species* of Things, and then presently, according to the abstract *idea* of that sort, something is found essential; *so that essential or not essential, relates only to our abstract ideas, and the names annexed to them*, which amounts to no more but this, that whatever particular thing has not in it those qualities contained in the abstract *idea* which any general term stands for, cannot be ranked under that species, nor be called by that name; since that abstract *idea* is the very *Effence* of that *species*. Thus if the *idea* of *Body* with some people be bare Extension, or Space, then *Solidity* is not essential to *Body*: If others make the *idea*, to which they give the name *Body* to be *Solidity* and Extension; then *solidity* is essential also to *Body*. That alone therefore is considered as essential, *which makes a part of the complex idea the name of a*

*Sort* stands for, without which no particular thing can be reckoned of that sort, nor be entitled to that name.

§ 4. *Substances* are distinguished into *Sorts* and *Species* by their *nominal Essence*; for it is that alone, that the name which is the mark of the Sort signifies: And the *species* of Things to us are *nothing but the ranking them under distinct names, according to the complex idea in Us*, and not according to precise, distinct *real Essences* in *Them*.

§ 5. We cannot rank and sort Things by their *real Essences*, because we know them not: Our faculties carry us no farther in the knowledge of Substances, than a collection of those sensible *ideas* we observe in them. But the internal Constitution whereon their properties depend, is utterly unknown to us. This is evident when we come to examine but the *stones* we tread on, or the *iron* we daily handle: We soon find that we know not their make, and can give no reason of the different qualities we find in them; and yet how infinitely these come short of the fine contrivances and unconceivable real Essences of *Plants* and *Animals*, every one knows. The workmanship of the All-wise and Powerful *God* in the great fabrick of the Universe, and every part thereof farther exceeds the comprehension of the most inquisitive and intelligent man, than the best contrivance of the most ingenious man, doth the conceptions of the most ignorant of rational creatures. In vain therefore do we pretend to range things into *sorts*, and dispose them into certain *Classes*, under names by their *real Essences*, that are so far from our discovery or comprehension.



§ 6. But though the *nominal Essences of Substances* are made by the mind, they are not yet made so arbitrarily as those of mixed Modes. To the making of any *nominal Essence*, it is necessary.

First, That the *ideas* whereof it consists, have such an union as to make but one *idea*, how compounded soever.

Secondly, That the particular *ideas* so united be exactly the same, neither more or less: For if two abstract complex *ideas* differ either in *number* or *sorts* of their component parts, they make two different, and not one and the same Essence.

§ 7. In the *First* of these, the mind in making its *complex ideas* of Substances, only follows *Nature*, and puts none together which are not supposed to have an union in nature. For men observing certain qualities always joined and existing together therein copy nature, and of *ideas* so united, make their complex ones of Substances.

Secondly, Though the mind in making its *complex ideas of Substances*, never puts any together that do not really, or are not supposed to coexist; yet the *number* it combines depends upon the various care, industry, or fancy of him that makes it. Men generally content themselves with some few obvious qualities, and often leave out others as material and as firmly united as those that they take in.

In bodies organized and propagated by Seeds, as *Vegetables* and *Animals*, the *shape* is that which to us is the leading quality, and most characteristical part that determines the *species*: In most other bodies not propagated by seed, it is the *colour* we chiefly fix on, and are most led by. Thus where we find the colour

colour of *Gold*, we are apt to imagine all the other qualities comprehended in our complex *idea* of *Gold*, to be there also.

§ 8. Though the *nominal* Essences of Substances are all supposed to be copied from Nature, yet they are all, or most of them, very imperfect : And since the composition of those complex *ideas* is in several men very different, we may conclude that these boundaries of species are as *Men*, and not as *Nature* makes them ; if at least there are in Nature any such prefixed bounds.

It is true, that many particular Substances are so made by Nature, that they have an agreement and likeness one with another, and so afford a foundation of being ranked into Sorts : But the *sorting* of things by us, being in order to naming and comprehending them under general terms, I cannot see how it can be properly said, that Nature sets the *boundaries* of the species of things. But if it be so, our *boundaries* of species, are not exactly conformable to Nature.

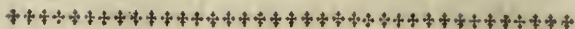
§ 9. If the *first sorting of Individual depends on the mind of man*. variously collecting the simple *ideas*, that make the *nominal Essence* of the lowest species ; it is much more evident, that the more *comprehensive Classes* called *Genera*, do so. In forming more general *ideas* that may comprehend different sorts, the mind leaves out those qualities that distinguish them, and puts into its new collection only such *ideas* as are common to several sorts. Thus by leaving out those qualities which are peculiar to Gold, Silver, &c. and retaining a complex *idea*, made up of those that are common to each species, there is a new *Genus* constituted, to which the name *Metal* is annexed.

§ 10.

§ 10. So that in this whole business of *Genera* and *Species*, the *Genus* or more comprehensive, is but a partial conception of what is in the *Species*, and the *Species* is but a partial *idea* of what is to be found in each *Individual*. In all which there is no new thing made, but only more or less comprehensive signs, whereby we may be enabled to express in a few syllables great numbers of particular things, as they agree in more or less general conceptions, which we have framed to that purpose, If these *abstract general ideas* be thought to be compleat, it can only be in respect of a certain established relation between them, and certain names, which are made use of to signify them, and not in respect of any thing existing as made by Nature.

§ 11. *This is adjusted to the true end of Speech*, which is to be the easiest and shortest way of communicating our notions. This is the proper business of *Genus* and *Species*: And this men do without any consideration of *real essences*, and *substantial forms*, which come not within the reach of our knowledge, when we think of those things; nor within the signification of our words, when we discourse with others.

§ 12. ' This is farther to be observed concerning  
' *Substances*, that they *alone* of all our several sorts of  
' *ideas*, have particular or *proper names*, whereby one  
' only particular thing is signified. Because in simple  
' *ideas*, modes and relations, it seldom happens that  
' men have occasion to mention often this, or that  
' particular, when it is absent.'



## C H A P. VII.

*Of Particles.*

## § 1.

**B**ESIDES words, which are the names of *ideas* in the mind, there are others made use of to signify the *Connexion* that the mind gives to *ideas* or propositions one with another, and to intimate some particular *Action* of its own at that time relating to those *ideas*. This it does several ways; as *is*, *is Not*, are marks of the mind affirming or denying: Besides which, the mind does in declaring its sentiments to others connect not only the parts of propositions, but whole sentences one to another with their several relations, and dependences to make a coherent discourse.

§ 2. The words signifying that connexion the mind gives to several affirmations and negations, that it unites in one continued Reasoning or Narration, are called *Particles*. And it is in the right use of these, that more particularly consists the clearness and beauty of a *Good Stile*. To express the dependence of his Thoughts and Reasonings, one upon another, a man must have words to show what connexion, restriction, distinction, opposition, emphasis, &c. he gives to each respective part of his discourse.

§ 3. These cannot be understood rightly, without a clear view of the postures, stands, turns, limitations, exceptions, and several other thoughts of the mind: Of these there are a great variety. much exceeding the number of *Particles* that most languages

ges have to express them by; for which reason it happens, that most of these Particles have divers, and sometimes almost opposite significations. Thus the particle *But* in *English*, has several very different significations; as, *But to say no more*: Here it intimates a stop of the mind in the course it was going, before it came to the end of it. *I saw but two Planets*: Here it shows that the mind limits the sense to what is expressed with a Negation of all other: *You pray, but it is not that God would bring you to the true Religion, but that he would confirm you in your own*. The former of these intimates a supposition in the mind of something otherwise than it should be: The latter shows, that the mind makes a direct opposition between that and what goes before. *All Animals have sense, But a Dog is an Animal*. Here it signifies the connexion of the latter proposition with the former. To these, divers other significations of this Particle might be added, if it were my business to examine it in its full latitude,

§ 4. I intend not here a full explication of this sort of Signs, the instances I have given in this one, may give occasion to reflect on their use and force in language, and lead us into the contemplation of several actions of our minds in discoursing, which it has found a way to intimate to others by these *Particles*, some whereof constantly, and others in certain constructions, have the sense of a whole sentence contained in them.

+++++

## C H A P. VIII.

*Of abstract and concrete Terms.*

## § 1.

THE Mind, as has been shown, has a power to *abstract* its *idea*, whereby the Sorts of Things are distinguished: Now each *abstract idea* being distinct, so that the one can never be the other, the mind will, by its intuitive knowledge perceive their difference; and therefore in propositions, no two whole *ideas* can ever be affirmed one of another: Nor does the common use of language permit *that any two abstract words or names of abstract ideas, should be affirmed one of another.* All our affirmations are only in *Concrete*, which is the affirming one *abstract idea* to be joined to another: Which *abstract ideas* in *Substances*, may be of any sort, though the most of them are of *Powers*: In all the rest these are little else but Relations.

§ 2. *All our simple ideas have abstract as well as concrete names, as Whiteness White, Sweetness Sweet, &c.* The like also holds in our *ideas* of Modes and Relations, as *Justice Just, Equality Equal, &c.* But as to our *ideas* of Substances, we have very few abstract names at all. Those few that the schools have forged, as *Animalitas, Humanitas, &c.* hold no proportion with the infinite number of names of substances, and could never get admittance into common use, or obtain the licence of publick approbation; which seems to intimate the confession of all mankind, that



that they have no *ideas* of the real Essences of Substances, since they have not names for such *ideas*. It was only the doctrine of *substantial Forms*, and the confidence of mistaken Pretenders to a Knowledge they had not, which first coined, and then introduced *Animakitas*, *Humanitas*, and the like: Which yet went very little farther than their own schools, and could never get to be current amongst understanding men.

\*\*\*\*\*

## C H A P. IX.

### *Of the Imperfection of Words.*

#### § 1.

TO examine the *Perfection* or *Imperfection* of Words, it is necessary to consider their use and end, which is twofold; *First*, to *record* our own thoughts: *Secondly*, to *communicate* our thoughts to others: The *First* is for the help of our own memories, whereby we do, as it were, talk to ourselves: For this purpose any Words may serve the turn: Words being *arbitrary signs*, we may use which we please for this purpose; and there will be no Imperfection in them, if we constantly use the same *sign* for the same *idea*.

§ 2. *Secondly*, As to *Communication* by Words; that too has a double use: *First*, Their *Civil Use*, which is such a Communication of thoughts and *ideas* by Words, as may serve in common Conversation and Commerce, about the ordinary Affairs and Conveniences of Civil Life. *Secondly*, The *philosophical* use

of Words, by which I mean such an use of them, as may serve to convey the precise notions of things, and to express certain Truths in general Propositions, these two uses are very distinct, and a great deal less exactness will serve in the one, than in the other.

§ 3. The end of Language in Communication is to be *understood*; that is, to excite by sounds in the *hearer*, the same *idea* which they stand for in the mind of the *speaker*. The *doubtfulness and uncertainty of their signification*, which is the *imperfection* we are here speaking of, has its cause more in the *ideas* themselves, than in any incapacity in the *sounds* to signify them; for in that regard they are all equally perfect. That then which makes the difference, is the difference of *ideas* they stand for, which must be learned and retained by those, who would discourse together intelligibly. Now this is difficult in these cases;

§ 4. *First*, Where the *ideas* they stand for are very complex. Hence the names of *mixed Modes* are liable to great uncertainty and obscurity in their signification. For here the *idea* being made up of many parts, it is not easy to form and retain it exactly; of this sort chiefly are moral words, which have seldom in two different men, the same precise signification.

§ 5. *Secondly*, Where the *ideas* they stand for, have no certain connexion in nature, and therefore no *settled standard* to rectify and adjust them by. This again is the case of the names of *mixed Modes*, which are assemblages of *ideas* put together at pleasure. *Common use indeed regulates the meaning of Words pretty well for common conversation*: But it is not sufficient to adjust them to philosophical discourses, there  
being

being scarce a name of any very *complex idea*, which in common use has not a great latitude; and is not made the sign of far different *ideas*.

§ 6. *The way of learning these names does not a little contribute to the doubtfulness of their signification.* For we may observe that children are taught the names of simple *ideas*, and substances, by having the things shown them; and then they repeat the name that stands for it; as *White, Sweet, Milk, Sugar, &c.* But in mixed *Modes* the sounds are learned first, and men are to learn afterwards their signification, by their own observation and industry, or the explication of others: Which is the reason that these words are little more than *bare sounds* in the minds of most, because few are at the pains to settle their *ideas* and notions precisely; and those which are, make them the signs of *ideas*, different from what others understand by them, which is the occasion of most disputes.

§ 7. *Thirdly*, Where the signification of a word is referred to a *standard* which is not easily known: This is the case of the names of *substances*, which being supposed to stand for their *real Essences*, must needs be of uncertain application, because these *Essences* are utterly unknown; and it will be impossible to know what is, or what is not *Antimony*, v. g. when that word is to stand for the real *Essence* of it; whereof we have no *idea* at all.

§ 8 Or suppose these names only stand for simple *ideas*, found to coexist in *substances*, yet thus they will be liable to great uncertainty too: Because these simple *ideas* being very numerous, men frame differ-

ent *ideas* of the same subjects, by putting different *ideas* into their complex one, of such substances several men observe several properties in the same substance, and none of them all; who having but imperfect descriptions of things, can have but uncertain significations of words.

§ 9. *Fourthly*, Where the signification of the word, and the real Essence of the thing, are not the same, which is still the case of substances; from hence we may observe.

§ 10. *First*, That the names of simple *ideas* are least liable to mistakes: *First*, Because the *ideas* they stand for, being each but one single perception, are easier got, and more clearly retained, than the more complex ones of Substances and Mixed Modes. *Secondly*, Because they are not referred to any other Essence, but barely that perception they immediately signify.

§ 11. *Secondly*, Names of simple Modes are next to simple *ideas* least liable to doubt or uncertainty especially those of Figure and Number, of which men have so clear and distinct *ideas*.

§ 12. *Thirdly*, In mixed Modes, when they are composed of a few and obvious *ideas*, their names are clear and distinct enough; otherwise doubtful and uncertain.

§ 13. *Fourthly*, The names of substances being annexed to *ideas*, that are neither the real Essences, nor exact Representations of things, are liable yet to greater Imperfection, when we come to a philosophical use of them.



## C H A P. X.

*Of the Abuse of Words.*

## § 1.

BESIDE the natural and unavoidable Imperfections of Languages, there are *wilful Faults* and *Neglects*, which men are often guilty of in their use of words. For,

§ 2. *First*, They use words *without clear and distinct* Ideas, or, which is worse, signs without any thing signified; such are for the most part introduced by *sects* of Philosophy and Religion, either out of an affectation of *singularity*, or to support some strange *Opinion*; or to cover the weakness of their *Hypothesis*. There are commonly such as had no determinate collection of *ideas* annexed to them, when they were first invented; or at least such, as, if well examined, will be found inconsistent, and therefore may justly be called insignificant terms: Instances of this kind may easily be had from the *school men* and *metaphysicians*. Others learn words which the propriety of language has affixed to very important *ideas*, and often upon occasion use them without any distinct meaning at all: Whence their notions being unsteady and confused, their discourse must be filled with empty unintelligible *Noise* and *Jargon*, especially in moral matters where the words stand for arbitrary, and numerous collections of *ideas*, not regularly and permanently united in Nature.

§ 3. *Secondly*, Another Abuse is *Inconstancy in the use of Words*: It is hard to find a discourse on any subject wherein the same words are not used sometimes for one collection of *ideas*, sometimes for another. The wilful doing whereof can be imputed to nothing but great folly, or greater dishonesty: And a man in his accounts with another, may with as much fairness make the characters of numbers, stand sometimes for one, and sometimes for another collection of *Units*; as in his discourse, or reasoning, make the same words stand for different collections of simple *ideas*.

§ 4. *Thirdly*, Another is an *affected obscurity*, either by using old words in new significations, or by introducing new and ambiguous terms, without defining them; or putting them together, so as to confound their ordinary meaning. Though the *Peripatetick philosophy* has been most eminent in this way, yet other sects have not been wholly clear of it. The admired *art of disputing* hath added much to the natural imperfection of Languages, whilst it has been made use of, and fitted to perplex the signification of words, more than to discover the Knowledge and Truth of things: And he that will look into that sort of learned writings, will find the words there much more obscure, uncertain, and undetermined in their meaning, than they are in ordinary Conversation.

§ 5. *Fourthly*, Another is the *taking words for things*: This, though it in some degree concerns all names in general; yet more particularly affects those of Substances. Thus in the *Peripatetick philosophy*, *Substantial Forms*, *Abhorrence of Vacuum*, &c. are taken for something real. To this Abuse those men  
are



are most subject, who confine their thoughts to any one *system*; and give themselves up into a firm belief of the perfection of any received *Hypothesis*; whereby they come to be persuaded, that the terms of that sect, are so suited to the nature of things, that they perfectly correspond with the real existence.

§ 6. *Fifthly*, Another is the *setting them in the place of things which they can by no means signify*. We may observe that in the general names of Substances, whereof the nominal Essences are only known to us, when we affirm or deny any thing about them, we do most commonly tacitly suppose or intend they should stand for the real Essence of a certain sort of Substances. Thus when a man says *Gold is malleable*, he would insinuate something more than this, what I call *Gold is malleable*, (though truly it amounts to no more) *namely*, that what has the real Essence of *Gold* is *malleable*, that is, that *malleableness* depends on, and is inseparable from the real Essence of *Gold*. But a man not knowing wherein that real Essence consists, the connexion in his mind of *malleableness*, is not truly with an *Essence* he knows not, but with the sound *Gold* he puts for it. It is true, the names of Substances would be much more useful; and Propositions express'd by them much more certain, were the real Essences of Substances the *ideas* in our minds, which those words signified. And it is for want of those real Essences that our words convey so little knowledge, or certainty in our discourses about them. But to suppose these names to stand for a thing, having the real Essence on which the properties depend, is to far from diminishing the imperfection of our words, that by a plain abuse it adds to it; when we  
would

would make them stand for something, which not being in our complex *ideas*, the name we use can no way be the sign of it. In *mixed Modes*, any *idea* of the complex one being left out, or changed, it is allowed to be another thing, that is, to be of another *species*, as is plain in *Chance medley*, *Man slaughter*, *Murder*, &c. because the complex *idea* signified by that name, is the *real* as well as *nominal* Essence; and there is no secret reference of that name to any other Essence, but that. But in Substances it is not so; for though in that called *Gold*, one puts in his complex *idea*, what another leaves out, and *vice versa*, yet men do not usually think the *species* changed, because they refer the name in their minds to a real immutable Essence of a thing existing, on which those properties depend: But this reference of the name to a thing we have not the *idea* of, is so far from helping us at all, that it only serves the more to involve us in difficulties. This reference is grounded on this supposition, namely, that the same precise internal constitution goes always with the same specific name: In which are contained these two false *suppositions*.

*First*, There are certain precise *Essences*, according to which, Nature makes all particular things; and by which they are distinguished into *species*.

*Secondly*, This tacitly insinuates as if we had *ideas* of these *Essences*; for why do we enquire, whether this or that thing have the real Essence of that *species* *man* for instance, if we did not suppose it known, which yet is utterly false; and therefore such applications of names as would make them stand for *ideas*, we have not, must needs cause great disorder in discourse

course and reasonings about them; and be a great inconvenience in our communication by words.

§ 7. *Sixthly*, Another more general, though less observed, abuse of words, is, that men having by long and familiar use, annexed to them certain *ideas*, they are apt to imagine so near and necessary a connexion, between the names, and the significations they use them in; that they forwardly suppose one cannot but understand what their meaning is; as if it were past doubt, that in the use of these common received sounds, the speaker and hearer had necessarily the same precise *ideas*. And so likewise taking the words of others, as naturally standing for just, what they themselves have been accustomed to apply them to, they never trouble themselves to explain their own, or understand another's meaning: From whence commonly proceeds noise, and wrangling without improvement or information; whilst men take words to be the constant regular marks of agreed notions, which in truth are no more but the voluntary and unsteady signs of their own *ideas*. Thus *life*, is a term, none more familiar: Any one almost would take it for an affront, to be asked what he meant by it, and yet if it comes in question, whether such a thing has *life*, or not, it is easy to perceive, that a clear distinct settled *idea*, does not always accompany the use of so known a word.

§ 8. *Seventhly*, *Figurative Speech* is also an abuse of Language: For though in discourses, where we seek rather pleasure and delight, than information and improvement, such ornaments as are borrowed from figurative speeches and allusions, can scarce pass for faults, yet if we would speak of things as they are,

we

we must allow, that all the *art of rhetorick*, besides order and clearness, all the artificial and figurative application of words eloquence hath invented, are for nothing else but to insinuate wrong *ideas*, move the passions, and thereby mislead the judgment, and so indeed are perfect cheat. And therefore, however allowable they may be in harangues and popular addresses; they are certainly in all discourses that pretend to inform and instruct, wholly to be avoided; and where truth and knowledge are concerned, cannot but be thought a great fault, either of the language or person that makes use of them.

§ 9. To conclude this consideration, *the ends of language in our discourse with others*, are chiefly these three.

First, *To make our thoughts or ideas known to another*: this we fail in: 1<sup>st</sup>, When we use names without clear and distinct *ideas* in our minds. 2<sup>dly</sup>, When we apply received names to *ideas*, to which the common use of that language does not apply them. 3<sup>dly</sup> When we apply them unsteadily, making them stand now for one, and by and by for another *idea*.

§ 10. Secondly, *To make known our thoughts with as much ease and quickness as is possible*. This men fail in when they have complex *ideas*, without having distinct names for them, which may happen either through the defect of a language, which has none, or the fault of that man who has not yet learned them.

§ 11. Thirdly, *To convey the knowledge of things*: This cannot be done, but when our *ideas* agree to the reality of things.

§ 12.

§ 12. *First*, He that hath *names* without *ideas*, wants meaning in his words, and speaks only empty sounds. *Secondly*, He that hath *complex ideas*, without names for them, wants dispatch in his expression. *Thirdly*, He that uses his words loosely and unsteadily, will either not be minded, or not understood. *Fourthly*, He that applies his names to *ideas*, different from their common use, wants *propriety* in his language, and speaks gibberish. *Fifthly*, And he that hath *ideas* of *substances*, disagreeing with the real existence of things, so far wants the materials of true knowledge in his understanding, and has instead thereof, *chimeras*.

§ 13. Language being the great conduit whereby men convey their discoveries, reasonings, and knowledge from one to another; he that makes an ill use of it, though he does not corrupt the fountains of knowledge which are in things themselves, yet he does as much as in him lies, break or stop the pipes whereby it is distributed to the publick use and advantage of mankind. He that uses words without any clear and steady meaning, what does he but lead himself and others into errors? And he that designedly does it, ought to be looked on as an enemy to truth and knowledge.

§ 14. If we look into books of controversy of any kind, we shall see that the effect of obscure, unsteady, and equivocal terms, is nothing but noise and wrangling about sounds, without convincing or bettering a man's understanding. For if the *idea* be not agreed on between speaker and hearer, for which the words stand, the argument is not about *things* but *names*.

§ 15 It deserves to be considered, and carefully examined, whether the greatest part of the disputes in the world, are not merely *verbal*, and about the signification of words; and that if the terms they are made in were defined and reduced in their significations, to the single *ideas* they stand for, those disputes would not end of themselves, and immediately vanish.

\*\*\*\*\*

## CHAP. XI.

*Of the Remedies of the foregoing Imperfections and Abuses.*

### § 1.

**T**O remedy the defects of speech above mentioned, the following rules may be of use.

*First*, A man should take care to use no word without a signification. no name without an *idea* for which he makes it stand. This rule will not seem needless to any one, who will take the pains to recollect how often he has met with such words, as *Instinct*, *Sympathy*, *Antipathy*, &c. so made use of, as he might easily conclude, that those that used them had no *ideas* in their minds to which they applied them.

§ 2. *Secondly*, Those *ideas* he annexes them to should be *clear* and *distinct*, which in complex *ideas* is by knowing the particular ones that make that composition; of which, if any one be again complex, we must know also the precise collection that is united in each, and so till we come to simple ones. In Substances, the *ideas* must not only be *distinct*, but also conformable to things as they exist.



§ 3. *Thirdly* He must apply his words, as near as may be. to such ideas, as common use has annexed them to: For words, especially of languages already framed, are no man's private possession, but the common measure of commerce and communication; and therefore it is not for any one to change the stamp they are current in, nor alter the ideas they are affixed to; or, at least, when there is a necessity to do so, he is bound to give notice of it. And therefore,

§ 4. *Fourthly*, When common use has left the signification of a word uncertain and loose, or where it is to be used in a peculiar sense; or where the term is liable to any doubtfulness or mistake, *there it ought to be defined*, and its signification ascertained.

§ 5. Words standing for *simple ideas* being not definable, their signification must be shown either, *First*, By a synonymous word. *Secondly*, By naming a subject, wherein that simple idea is to be found. *Thirdly*, By presenting to the senses that subject, which may produce it in the mind, and make him actually have the idea that word stands for.

§ 6. *Mixed Modes* may be perfectly defined, by exactly enumerating those ideas that go to each composition. This ought more especially to be done in mixed Modes belonging to *Morality*: Since definition is the only way whereby the precise meaning of *moral Words* can be known: And yet a way whereby their precise meaning may be known certainly, and without leaving any room for any contest about it.

§ 7. *For the explaining the signification of the names of substances*, both the fore-mentioned ways, viz. of showing and defining, are requisite in many cases to be made use of; their names are best defined by their leading Qualities, which are mostly *shape* in animals

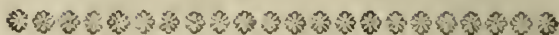
and vegetables; and *colour* in inanimate bodies; and in some, both together. Now these leading Qualities are best made known by showing, and can hardly be made known otherwise. The shape of a *Horse* or *Cassowary* will be but imperfectly imprinted on the mind by words: The sight of the animals doth it much better. And the *idea* of the particular colour of *Gold* is not to be got by any description of it, but only by the frequent exercise of the eyes about it. The like may be said of those other simple *ideas*, peculiar in their kind to any substance, for which precise *ideas* there are no peculiar names.

But because many of the simple *ideas* which make up our specifick *ideas* of substances, are powers which lie not obvious to our sense in the things, as they ordinarily appear; therefore in the signification of our names of Substances, some part of the signification will be better made known, by enumerating those simple *ideas*, than in showing the substance itself. For he that to the Yellow shining colour of Gold, got by sight, shall from my enumerating them have the *ideas* of great Ductibility, Fusibility, Fixedness, and Solubility in *Aqua Regia*, will have a perfecter *idea* of Gold, than he can have by seeing a piece of Gold, and thereby imprinting in his mind only its obvious qualities.

§ 8. It were to be wished that words standing for things, which are known and distinguished by their outward shapes, should be expressed by little draughts and prints made of them. A Vocabulary made after this fashion, would perhaps with more ease, and in less time, teach the true signification of many terms, especially in languages of remote countries, or ages; and settle truer *ideas* in mens minds of several things  
whereof

whereof we read the names in ancient authors, than all the large and laborious comments of learned critics. *Naturalists* that treat of *Plants* and *Animals*, have found the benefit of this way : And he that consults them will find that he has a clearer *idea* of *Apium* and *Ibex* from a little print of that herb or beast, than he could have from a long definition of the names of either of them ; and so no doubt he would have of *Strigil* and *Sistrum*, if instead of a *Curry-comb* or *Cymbal*, which are the English names dictionaries render them by, he could see stamped in the margin small pictures of these instruments, as they were in use amongst the ancients.

§ 9. *Fifthly*, The last rule that I shall mention is, that in all discourses wherein one man pretends to instruct or convince another, he should *use the same word constantly in the same sense* ; if this were done (which no body can refuse, without great dissimulation) many of the books extant might be spared ; many of the controversies in dispute, would be at an end ; several of those great volumes swollen with ambiguous words, now used in one sense, and by and by in another, would shrink into a very narrow compass : And many of the *Philosophers*, (to mention no other) as well as *Poets* works, might be contained in a *Nut shell*.



## B O O K IV.

## C H A P. I.

*Of Knowledge in General.*

## § 1.

SINCE the mind in all its thoughts and reasonings, has no other immediate object but its own *ideas*, which alone it does or can contemplate ; it is evident that our knowledge is only conversant about them. *Knowledge* then seems to be nothing but *the perception of the connexion and agreement, or disagreement and repugnancy of any of our ideas* : Where this perception is, there is knowledge ; and where it is not, there, though we fancy, guess, or believe, yet we always come short of *Knowledge*. When we know that *White* is not *Black*, what do we but perceive that these two *ideas* do not agree ? Or that the three angles of a *Triangle*, are equal to two right ones ; what do we more but perceive that equality to two right ones, does necessarily agree to, and is inseparable from the three angles of a *Triangle* ! But to understand a little more distinctly, wherein this agreement or disagreement consists, we may reduce it to all these *four sorts* ; First, *Identity or Diversity* : Secondly, *Relation* ; Thirdly, *Coeistence* ; Fourthly, *Real Existence*.

§ 2. *1st Identity or Diversity* : It is the first act of the mind, *to perceive* its ideas ; and so far as it perceives them, to know each what it is, and thereby to perceive their difference, that is, the one not  
to

to be the other : By this the mind clearly perceives each *idea* to agree with itself, and to be what it is ; and all distinct *ideas* to disagree. This it does without any pains or deduction, by its natural power of perception and distinction. This is what men of art have reduced to those general rules, *viz. What is, is. And it is impossible for the same thing to be, and not to be.* But no *maxim* can make a man know it clearer, that *Round* is not *Square*, than the bare perception of those two *ideas*, which the mind at first sight perceives to disagree.

§ 3. *2dly*, The next sort of agreement or disagreement the mind perceives in any of its *ideas*, may be called *Relative*, and is nothing but *the perception of the Relation, between any two ideas* of what kind soever ; that is, their agreement or disagreement one with another in several ways the mind takes of comparing them.

§ 4. *3dly*, The third sort of agreement or disagreement to be found in our *ideas*, is *Coexistence*, or *Non-coexistence* in the same subject ; and this belongs particularly to Substances. Thus when we pronounce concerning *Gold*, that it is fixed, it amounts to no more but this, that fixedness, or a power to remain in the fire unconsumed, is an *idea* that always accompanies that particular sort of *Yellowness, Weight, Fusibility, &c.* which make our complex *idea*, signified by the word *Gold*.

§ 5. *4thly*, The fourth sort is that of actual and *real Existence* agreeing to any *idea*. Within these four sorts of agreement or disagreement, I suppose is contained all the knowledge we have, or are capable of. For all that we know or can affirm concerning

any *idea*, is, that it is, or is not the same with some other : As that *Blue is not Yellow*. That it does, or does not coexist with another in the same subject : As that *Iron is susceptible of Magnetical Impressions* : That it has that or this Relation to some other *ideas* : As that *two Triangles upon equal bases between two parallels are equal* ; or that it has a real Existence without the mind : As *that God is*.

§ 6. There are several ways wherein the mind is possessed of truth, each of which is called Knowledge. *First*, There is *actual Knowledge*, when the mind has a present view of the agreement or disagreement of any of its *ideas*, or of the Relation they have one with another. *Secondly*, A man is said to know any proposition, when having once evidently perceived the agreement or disagreement of the *ideas* whereof it consists, and so lodged it in his memory, that whenever it comes to be reflected on again, the mind assents to it without doubt or hesitation, and is certain of the truth of it. And this may be called *habitual Knowledge* : And thus a man may be said to know all those truths which are lodged in his memory, by a foregoing, clear, and full perception.

§ 7. Of *habitual Knowledge* there are two sorts : The one is of *such truths laid up in the memory, as whenever they occur to the mind, it actually perceives the Relation that is between those ideas*. And this is in all those truths, where the *ideas* themselves, by an immediate view, discover their agreement or disagreement one with another. The other is of *such truths, whereof the mind having been convinced, it retains the memory of the conviction, without the proofs*. Thus a man that remembers certainly, that he once perceived



ceived the demonstration, that the three angles of a Triangle are equal to two right ones, knows it to be true, when that demonstration is gone out of his mind, and possibly cannot be recollected: But he knows it in a different way from what he did before; namely, not by the intervention of those intermediate *ideas*, whereby the agreement or disagreement of those in the proposition was at first perceived; but by remembering, *i. e.* knowing that he was once certain of the truth of this proposition, that the three angles of a Triangle are equal to two right ones. The immutability of the same Relations between the same immutable things, is now the *idea* that shows him, that if the three angles of a Triangle were once equal to two right ones, they will always be so. And hence he comes to be certain, that what was once true, is always true; what *ideas* once agreed, will always agree; and consequently, what he once knew to be true, he will always know to be true, as long as he can remember that he once knew it.

\*\*\*\*\*

## CH A P. II.

### *Of the Degrees of our Knowledge.*

#### § 1.

ALL our Knowledge consisting in the view the mind has of its own *ideas*, which is the utmost light and greatest certainty we are capable of: The *different clearness of our Knowledge*, seems to lie in the different way of perception the mind has of the agreement or disagreement of any of its *ideas*.

§ 2. When the mind perceives this agreement or disagreement of two *ideas* immediately by themselves, without the intervention of any other ; we may call it *intuitive Knowledge*, in which cases the mind perceives truth, as the eye does light, only by being directed towards it. Thus the mind perceives that *White is not Black*, that *Three are more than two*, and *equal to One and Two*. This part of Knowledge is irresistible, and like the bright sun-shine, forces itself immediately to be perceived as soon as ever the mind turns its view that way. It is on this *intuition*, that depends all the certainty and evidence of our other Knowledge ; which certainty every one finds to be so great, that he cannot imagine, and therefore not require a greater.

§ 3. The next degree of Knowledge is, where the mind perceives not this agreement or disagreement immediately, or by the *Juxta position* as it were of the *ideas*, because those *ideas* concerning whose agreement or disagreement the enquiry is made, cannot by the mind be so put together, as to show it. In this case the mind is fain to discover the agreement or disagreement which it searches, by the intervention of other *ideas* : And this is that which we call *Reasoning* : And thus, if we would know the agreement or disagreement in bigness, between the three angles of a Triangle, and two right Angles ; we cannot by an immediate view, and comparing them, do it ; because the three angles of a Triangle cannot be brought at once, and be compared with any other one, or two angles. And so of this, the mind has no immediate or intuitive Knowledge. But we must find out some other Angles, to which the three angles of a Triangle have

have equality, and finding those equal to two right ones, we come to know the equality of these three Angles to two right ones. Those intervening *ideas*, which serve to show the agreement of any two others, are called *Proofs*. And where the agreement or disagreement is by this means plainly and clearly perceived, it is called *Demonstration*. A quickness in the mind to find those *Proofs*, and to apply them right, is, I suppose, that which is called *Sagacity*.

§ 4. This Knowledge, though it be certain, is not so *clear and evident* as *intuitive* Knowledge. It requires pains and attention, and steady application of mind, to discover the agreement or disagreement of the *ideas* it considers, and there must be a progression by steps and degrees, before the mind can in this way arrive at certainty. Before *Demonstration* there was a doubt, which in *intuitive Knowledge* cannot happen to the mind, that has its faculty of Perception left to a degree capable of distinct *ideas*, no more than it can be a doubt to the Eye (that can distinctly see *White* and *Black*) whether this Ink and Paper be all of a Colour.

§ 5. Now in every step that Reason makes in *demonstrative Knowledge*, there is an *intuitive Knowledge* of that agreement or disagreement it seeks with the next intermediate *idea*, which it uses as a Proof; for if it were not so, that yet would need a Proof; since, without the Perception of such agreement or disagreement, there is no Knowledge produced. By which, it is evident, that every step in Reasoning, that produces Knowledge, has *intuitive Certainty*; which when the mind perceives, there is no more required but to remember it, to make the agreement or disagreement

agreement of the *ideas* concerning which we enquire, visible and certain. This *intuitive Perception* of the agreement or disagreement of the intermediate *ideas* in each step and progression of the Demonstration, must also be exactly carried in the mind; and a man must be sure that no part is left out; which because in long deductions, the memory cannot easily retain, this Knowledge becomes more imperfect than *intuitive*; and men often embrace Falsehoods, for Demonstrations.

§ 6. It has been generally taken for granted, that *Mathematicks* alone are capable of demonstrative Certainty. But to have such an agreement or disagreement as may be *intuitively* perceived, being as I imagine not the privilege of the *ideas* of *Number*, *Extension* and *Figure* alone; it may possibly be the want of due method and application in us, and not of sufficient evidence in things, that Demonstration has been thought to have so little to do in other parts of Knowledge. For, in whatever *ideas* the mind can perceive the agreement or disagreement immediately, there it is capable of *intuitive Knowledge*: And where it can perceive the agreement or disagreement of any two *ideas*, by an *intuitive Perception* of the agreement or disagreement they have with any intermediate *ideas*, there the mind is capable of Demonstration, which is not limited to the *ideas* of *Figure*, *Number*, *Extension*, or their Modes. The reason why it has been generally supposed to belong to them only, is because in comparing their Equality or Excess, the *Modes of Numbers* have every the least difference, very clear and perceivable: And in *Extension*, though every the least Excess is not so perceptible, yet the  
mind

mind has found out ways to discover the just Equality of two Angles, Extensions, or Figures; and both, that is, Numbers and Figures, can be set down by visible and lasting marks.

§ 7. But in other simple *ideas*, whose Modes and Differences are made and counted by Degrees, and not Quantity, we have not so nice and accurate a distinction of their Differences, as to perceive or find ways to measure their just Equality, or the least Differences. For those other simple *ideas* being Appearances or Sensations produced in us, by the *Size, Figure, Motion, &c.* of minute Corpuscles singly insensible; their different Degrees also depend on the variation of some, or all of those causes; which since it cannot be observed by us in Particles of Matter, whereof each is too subtile to be perceived, it is impossible for us to have any exact measures of the different degrees of these simple *ideas*. Thus, for instance, not knowing what number of Particles, nor what Motion of them is fit to produce any precise degree of *Whiteness*; we cannot demonstrate the certain equality of any two degrees of *Whiteness*, because we have no certain standard to measure them by, nor means to distinguish every the least difference: The only help we have being from our senses, which in this point fail us.

§ 8. But where the difference is so great as to produce in the mind *ideas* clearly distinct; there *ideas* of *Colours*, as we see in different kinds, *Blue* and *Red* (for instance) are as capable of Demonstration, as *ideas* of Number and Extension. What is here said of Colours, I think, holds true in all secondary Qualities. These two then, *Intuition* and *Demonstration*,  
are



are the degrees of our *Knowledge* : Whatever comes short of one of these, is but *Faith* or *Opinion*, not *Knowledge*, at least in all *general Truths*.

§ 9. There is indeed another Perception of the mind employed about the *particular Existence of finite Beings*, without us, which going beyond Probability, but not reaching to either of the foregoing degrees of Certainty, passes under the name of Knowledge. Nothing can be more certain, than that the *idea* we receive from an external Object is in our minds. This is *intuitive Knowledge* ; but whether we can thence certainly infer the Existence of any thing without us, corresponding to that *idea*, is that whereof some men think there may be a question made, because men may have such an *idea* in their minds, when no such thing exists, no such Object affects their senses. But it is evident that we are invincibly conscious to ourselves of a different Perception, when we look upon the *Sun* in the day, and think on it by night ; when we actually taste *Wormwood*, or smell a *Rose*, or only think on that *Savour* or *Odour* : So that I think we may add to the two former sorts of Knowledge, this also of the Existence of particular external Objects, by that Perception and Consciousness we have, of the actual entrance of *ideas* from them, and allow these three degrees of Knowledge, viz. *intuitive, demonstrative, and sensitive*.

§ 10. But since our Knowledge is founded on, and employed about our *ideas* only ; will it follow thence that it must be conformable to our *ideas*, and that where our *ideas* are clear and distinct, obscure and confused, there our Knowledge will be so too ? I answer, No : For our Knowledge consisting in the

Per-



Perception of the agreement or disagreement of any two *ideas*; its clearness or obscurity consists in the clearness or obscurity of that Perception, and not in the clearness or obscurity of the *ideas* themselves. A man (for instance) that has a clear *idea* of the angles of a Triangle, and of Equality to two right ones, may yet have but an obscure Perception of their agreement; and so have but a very obscure Knowledge of it. But obscure and confused *ideas* can never produce any clear or distinct Knowledge; because, as far as any *ideas* are obscure or confused, so far the mind can never perceive clearly, whether they agree or disagree: Or, to express the same thing in a way less apt to be misunderstood; he that hath not determined *ideas* to the words he uses, cannot make propositions of them, of whose truth he can be certain.

\*\*\*\*\*

### C H A P. III.

#### *Of the Extent of Human Knowledge.*

##### § 1.

FROM what has been said concerning Knowledge, it follows, *First*, That we can have no Knowledge farther than we have *ideas*.

§ 2. *Secondly*, That we have no Knowledge farther than we can have Perception of that agreement or disagreement of our *ideas*, either by *Intuition*, *Demonstration*, or *Sensation*.

§ 3. *Thirdly*, We cannot have an *intuitive* Knowledge that shall extend itself to all our *ideas*, and all that we would know about them; because we can-

not examine and perceive all the relations they have one to another, by Juxta position, or an immediate Comparison one with another. Thus we cannot *intuitively* perceive the equality of two Extensions, the difference of whose figures makes their parts incapable of an exact immediate application.

§ 4. *Fourthly*, Our *rational* Knowledge cannot reach to the whole extent of our *ideas*; because between two different *ideas* we would examine, we cannot always find such *Proofs* as we can connect one to another, with an *intuitive Knowledge* in all the parts of the Deduction.

§ 5. *Fifthly*, *Sensative* Knowledge reaching no farther than the Existence of things actually present to our senses, is yet much narrower than either of the former.

§ 6. From all which it is evident, that the *extent of our Knowledge*, comes not only short of the reality of *Things*, but even of the extent of our own *ideas*. We have the *ideas* of a *Square*, a *Circle* and *Equality*, and yet perhaps shall never be able to find a *Circle equal to a Square*.

§ 7. ' We have the *ideas* of *matter* and *thinking*,  
 ' but possibly shall never be able to know, whether  
 ' any mere material being thinks or no; it being im-  
 ' possible for us, by the contemplation of our own  
 ' *ideas*, without revelation, to discover, whether Om-  
 ' nipotency has not given to some systems of matter  
 ' fitly disposed, a *power to perceive and think*, or else  
 ' joined to matter so disposed, a *thinking immaterial*  
 ' *Substance*: It being not much more remote from  
 ' our comprehension to conceive, that God can, if  
 ' he pleases, superadd to matter a *faculty of think-*  
 ' *ing*,

'ing, than that he should superadd to it *another substance, with a faculty of thinking*; since we know not wherein thinking consists, nor to what sort of substances the Almighty has been pleased to give that power, which cannot be in any created being, but merely by the good pleasure and bounty of the Creator.

§ 8. 'I say not this, that I may any way lessen the belief of the soul's *immateriality*: I am not here speaking of probability, but knowledge; and I think that it is of use to us, to discern how far our knowledge does reach; for the state that we are at present in, not being that of vision, we must, in many things, content ourselves with faith and probability: And in the present question, about the immateriality of the soul, if our faculties cannot arrive at demonstrative certainty, we need not think it strange. All the great ends of morality and religion, are well enough secured, without philosophical proofs of the soul's immateriality, since it is evident, that he who made us sensible intelligent beings, can, and will restore us to the like state of sensibility in another world, and make us capable there to receive the retribution he has designed to men, according to their doings in this life. And therefore it is not of such mighty necessity to determine one way or the other, as some over zealous for, or against the immateriality of the soul, have been forward to make the world believe.'

§ 9. The affirmations or Negations we make concerning the *ideas* we have, being reduced to the four sorts above mentioned, *viz. Identity, Coexistence, Relation,*

lation, and *real Existence*; I shall examine how far our Knowledge extends in each of these.

First, As to *Identity and Diversity*, our intuitive Knowledge is as far extended as our ideas themselves; and there can be no *idea* in the mind, which it does not presently, by an intuitive Knowledge, perceive to be what it is, and to be different from any other.

§ 10. Secondly, As to the agreement or disagreement of our *ideas* in *Coexistence*: In this our Knowledge is very short, though in this consists the greatest and most material part of our Knowledge, concerning *Substances*: For our *ideas* of *Substances*, being, as I have shown, nothing but certain *Collections of simple ideas, coexisting in one subject*, (our *idea* of *Flame*, for instance, is a *Body hot, luminous, and moving upward.*) When we would know any thing farther concerning this or any other sort of Substance, what do we but enquire what other qualities or powers these Substances have or have not? which is nothing else but to know what other simple *ideas* do, or do not *coexist* with those that make up that complex *idea*. The reason of this is, because the simple *ideas* which make up our complex *ideas* of Substances, have no visible necessary connexion or inconsistency with other simple *ideas*, whose Coexistence with them we would inform ourselves about. These *ideas* being likewise, for the most part, *secondary Qualities* which depend upon the *primary Qualities* of their minute or insensible parts, or on something yet more remote from our comprehension; it is impossible we should know which have a necessary Union, or Inconsistency one with another, since we know not the Root from whence they spring, or the Size, Figure, and Texture

Texture of Parts on which they depend, and from which they result.

§ 11. Besides this, there is no *discoverable Connexion* between any *secondary Quality*, and *those primary Qualities* that it depends on. We are so far from knowing what *Figure*, *Size*, or *Motion* produces (for instance) a *yellow Colour*, or *sweet Taste*, or a *sharp Sound*, that we can by no means conceive how any *Size*, *Figure*, or *Motion* can possibly produce in us the *idea* of any *Colour*, *Taste*, or *Sound*, whatsoever; and there is no conceivable *Connexion* between the one and the other.

§ 12. Our knowledge therefore of *Coexistence* reaches little farther than *Experience*. Some few indeed of the *primary Qualities* have a necessary *Dependence*, and visible *Connexion* one with another: As *Figure* necessarily supposes *Extension*, *receiving or communicating Motion by Impulse*, supposes *Solidity*. But *Qualities* coexistent in any subject, without this *Dependence* and *Connexion*, cannot certainly be known to coexist any farther, than experience by our senses informs us. Thus, though upon trial we find *Gold* *Yellow*, *Weighty*, *Malleable*, *Fusible* and *Fixed*, yet because none of these have any evident *Dependence*, or necessary *connexion* with the other; we cannot certainly know, that where any *four* of these are, the *fifth* will be there also, how highly probable soever it may be: But the highest degree of *Probability*, amounts not to *Certainty*; without which there can be no true Knowledge: For this *Coexistence* can be no further known, that it is perceived; and it cannot be perceived, but either in *particular* subjects, by the

O 3

observation



observation of our senses ; or in *general*, by the necessary Connexion of the *ideas* themselves.

§ 13. As to *Incompatibility* or *Repugnancy to Co-existence*. we may know that any subject can have of each sort of *primary* Qualities, but one particular at once. One Extension, one Figure ; and so of sensible *ideas* peculiar to each sense : For whatever of each kind is present in any subject, excludes all other of that sort : For instance, one subject cannot have *two Smells*, or *two Colours* at the same time.

§ 14. As to *Powers of Substances*, which makes a great part of our enquiries about them, and is no inconsiderable branch of our Knowledge : Our Knowledge as to these reaches little farther than *Experience* ; because they consist in a Texture and Motion of parts, which we cannot by any means come to discover ; and I doubt whether with those *Faculties* we have, we shall ever be able to carry our general Knowledge much farther in this part. *Experience* is that which in this part we must depend on ; and it were to be wished that it were more improved : We find the advantages some mens generous pains, have this way brought to the stock of *natural Knowledge*. And if others, especially the *Philosophers by fire* who pretend to it, had been so wary in their Observations, and sincere in their Reports, as those who call themselves *Philosophers* ought to have been : Our acquaintance with the Bodies here about us, and our insight into their powers and operations had been yet much greater.

§ 15. As to the third sort the *agreement or disagreement of our ideas in any other Relation* : This is the largest field of Knowledge, and it is hard to determine



determine how far it may extend. This part depending on our sagacity in finding intermediate *ideas*, that may show the Habitudes and Relations of *ideas*; it is an hard matter to tell when we were at an end of such discoveries. They that are ignorant of *Algebra*, cannot imagine the wonders in this kind that are to be done by it: And what farther improvements and helps, advantageous to other parts of Knowledge, the sagacious mind of man may yet find out, it is not easy to determine. This at least I believe, that the *ideas* of *Quantity*, are not those alone that are capable of Demonstration and Knowledge: And that other, perhaps more useful parts of Contemplation, would afford us Certainty, if Vices, Passions, and domineering interest did not oppose or menace endeavours of this kind.

§ 16. The *idea* of a *supreme Being*, infinite in Power, Goodness, and Wisdom, whose Workmanship we are, and on whom we depend; and the *idea* of *ourselves*, as understanding rational Creatures, would, I suppose, if duly considered, afford such Foundations of our *Duty*, and *Rules of Action*, as might place *Morality among the Sciences capable of Demonstration*: Wherein I doubt not but from principles as incontestible as those of the *Mathematicks*, by necessary consequences, the measure of *Right* and *Wrong* might be made out, to any one that will apply himself with the same indifferency and attention to the one, as he does to the other of these Sciences. The Relations of other Modes may certainly be perceived as well as those of Number and Extension. *Where there is no Property, there is no Injustice*, is a Proposition as certain as any Demonstration in *Euclid*: For the *idea*  
of

of *Property* being a right to any thing; and the *idea* of *Injustice*, being the invasion or violation of that right; it is evident that these *ideas* being thus established, and these names annexed to them, I can as certainly know this Proposition to be true, as that a *Triangle has three Angles equal to two right ones*. Again, *no Government allows absolute Liberty*. The *idea* of *Government* being the establishment of Society upon certain rules or laws, which require conformity to them; and the *idea* of *absolute Liberty*, being for any one to do whatever he pleases, I am as capable of being certain of the truth of this Proposition, as of any in *Mathematicks*.

§ 17. What has given the advantage to the *ideas* of *Quantity*, and made them thought more capable of Certainty and Demonstration, is,

*First*, That they can be represented by sensible marks, which have a nearer correspondence with them, than any Words or Sounds. *Diagrams* drawn on paper, are copies of the *ideas*, and not liable to the uncertainty that words carry in their signification. But we have no sensible Marks that resemble our *moral ideas*, and nothing but words to express them by; which though, when written, they remain the same; yet the *ideas* they stand for, may change in the same man; and it is very seldom that they are not different in different persons.

*Secondly*, *moral ideas*, are commonly more complex than Figures: Whence these two inconveniences follow: *First*, That their names are of more uncertain Signification; the precise collection of simple *ideas* they stand for, not being so easily agreed on, and to the Sign that is used for them in Communication always,

ways, and in thinking often, does not steadily carry with it the same *idea*. *Secondly*, The mind cannot easily retain those precise combinations so exactly and perfectly as is necessary; in the examination of the Habitudes and Correspondences, agreements or disagreements of several of them one with another, especially where it is to be judged of by long deductions, and the Intervention of several other complex *ideas*, to show the agreement or disagreement of two remote ones.

§ 18. Now one part of these disadvantages in *moral ideas*, which has made them be thought not capable of Demonstration, may in a good measure be remedied by *Definitions*, setting down that collection of simple *ideas* which every term shall stand for, and then using the terms steadily and constantly for that precise collection.

§ 19. As to the fourth sort of Knowledge, *viz. Of the real actual Existence of things*, we have an *intuitive* Knowledge of our own *Existence*: A *demonstrative* Knowledge of the *Existence of God*; and a *sensitive* Knowledge of the *Objects that present themselves to our Senses*.

§ 20. From what has been said we may discover the *Causes of our Ignorance*, which are chiefly these three, *First*, Want of *ideas*; *Secondly*, Want of a discoverable connexion between the *ideas* we have *Thirdly*, Want of tracing and examining our *ideas*.

§ 21. *First*, There are some things we are ignorant of for want of *ideas*. All the simple *ideas* we have, are confined to the Observation of our Senses, and the Operation of our Minds, that we are conscious of in ourselves. What other *ideas* it is possible

sible other creatures may have, by the assistance of other senses and faculties more or perfecter than we have, or different from ours, it is not for us to determine ; but to say or think there are no such, because we conceive nothing of them, is no better an argument, than if a blind man should be positive in it, that there was no such thing as sight and colours, because he had no manner of *idea* of any such thing. What faculties therefore other species of creatures have to penetrate into the nature and inmost constitutions of things, we know not. This we know, and certainly find, that we want other views of them, besides those we have to make discoveries of them more perfect. The *intellectual* and *sensible* world are in this perfectly alike, that the parts which we see of either of them, hold no proportion with that we see not ; and whatsoever we can reach with our eyes, or our thoughts of either of them, is but a point, almost nothing, in comparison of the rest.

§ 22. Another great cause of Ignorance, is *the want of ideas that we are capable of*. This keeps us in ignorance of things we conceive capable of being known. Bulk, Figure, and Motion we have *ideas* of : Yet not knowing what is the particular bulk, motion and figure of the greatest part of the bodies of the Universe, we are ignorant of the several Powers, Efficacies and Ways of Operation, whereby the Effects we daily see are produced. These are hid from us in some things, by being *too remote*, in others by being *too minute*.

§ 23. When we consider the vast distance of the known and visible parts of the world, and the reasons we have to think that what lies within our ken,  
is

is but a small part of the immense Universe ; we shall then discover an huge Abyfs of Ignorance. What are the particular fabricks of the great masses of Matter, which make up the whole stupendous frame of corporeal Beings, how far they are extended, and what is their motion, and how continued, and what influence they have upon one another, are contemplations that at first glimpse our thoughts lose themselves in. If we confine our thoughts to this little Canton, I mean this System of our Sun, and the grosser Masses of Matter that visibly move about it ; what several sorts of Vegetables, Animals, and Intellectual corporeal Beings, infinitely different from those of our little spot of Earth, may probably be in other *Planets*, to the knowledge of which, even of their outward figures and parts, we can no way attain, whilst we are confined to this Earth, there being no natural means, either by Sensation or Reflection, to convey their certain *ideas* into our minds ?

§ 24. There are other Bodies in the Universe, no less concealed from us by their *minuteness*. These insensible Corpuscles being the active parts of Matter, and the great instruments of Nature, on which depend all their *secondary* Qualities and Operations, our want of precise distinct *ideas* of their *primary* Qualities, keeps us in incurable Ignorance of what we desire to know about them. Did we know the mechanical affections of *Rhubarb* and *Opium*, we might as easily account for their Operations of *Purging* and *causing Sleep*, as a Watch-maker can for the motions of his watch. The dissolving of Silver in *Aqua Fortis*, or Gold in *Aqua Regia*, and not *vice versa*, would be then perhaps no more difficult to know, than it is

to



to a *Smith*, to understand why the turning of one key will open a lock, and not the turning of another. But whilst we are destitute of senses, acute enough to discover the minute particles of Bodies, and to give us *ideas* of their mechanical affections, we must be content to be ignorant of their Properties and Operations ; nor can we be assured about them any farther, than some few trials we make, are able to reach : But whether they will succeed again another time, we cannot be certain. This hinders our certain knowledge of universal truths concerning natural Bodies : And our reason carries us herein very little beyond particular matter of fact.

§ 25. And therefore I am apt to doubt, that how far soever human Industry may advance useful and *experimental Philosophy* in physical things, yet *scientific* will still be out of our reach ; because we want perfect and adequate *ideas* of those very Bodies which are nearest to us, and most under our command.

§ 26. This at first sight shows us how disproportionate our knowledge is to the whole extent, even of *material* Beings : To which, if we add the consideration of that infinite number of Spirits that may be, and probably are, which are yet more remote from our Knowledge, whereof we have no cognizance : We shall find this cause of Ignorance conceal from us, in an impenetrable obscurity, almost the whole *intellectual* world : A greater certainly and a more beautiful world than the *material*. For bating some very few *ideas* of Spirit, we get from our own mind by reflection, and from thence the best



we can collect, of the *Father of all Spirits*, the Author of them, and us, and all things: We have no certain Information, so much as of the Existence of other Spirits but by Revelation: Much less have we distinct *ideas* of their different Natures, States, Powers, and several Constitutions, wherein they agree or differ one from another, and from us. And therefore in what concerns their different Species and Properties, we are under an absolute Ignorance.

§ 27. The *second* Cause of Ignorance is the want of discoverable connexion between those *ideas* we have; where we want that, we are utterly incapable of universal and certain Knowledge; and are, as in the former case, left only to *Observation* and *Experiment*. Thus the mechanical affections of Bodies, having no affinity at all with the *ideas* they produce in us, we can have no distinct Knowledge of such Operations beyond our Experience; and can reason no otherwise about them, than as the effects or appointment of an infinitely wise Agent, which perfectly surpasses our comprehensions.

The Operation of our minds upon our Bodies, is as unconceivable. How any *Thought* should produce a motion in *Body*, is as remote from the nature of our *ideas*, as how any *Body* should produce any *thought* in the *mind*. That it is so, if experience did not convince us, the consideration of the things themselves, would never be able in the least to discover to us.

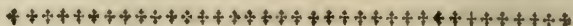
§ 28. In some of our *ideas* there are certain Relations, Habitues, and Connexions, so visibly included in the nature of the *ideas* themselves, that we cannot conceive them separable from them by any

power whatsoever: In these only we are capable of certain and universal knowledge. Thus the *idea* of a *right lined Triangle*, necessarily carries with it an *Equality of its Angles to two right ones*. But the coherence and continuity of the parts of matter; the production of Sensation in us, of *Colours* and *Sounds*, &c. by Impulse, and Motion, being such wherein we can discover no natural Connexion with any *ideas* we have, we cannot but ascribe them to the arbitrary will and good pleasure of the wise Architect. The things that we observe constantly to proceed regularly, we may conclude do act by a law set them; but yet by a law that we know not; whereby, though causes work steadily, and effects flow constantly from them; yet their connexions and dependencies being not discoverable in our *ideas*, we can have but experimental knowledge of them. Several effects come every day within the notice of our *Senses*, of which we have so far *sensitive* Knowledge. But the Causes, Manner, and Certainty of their Production, we must, for the foregoing reasons, be content to be ignorant of. In these we can go no farther than particular *Experience* informs us of matter of fact, and by *Analogy*, guess what effects the like Bodies are upon other Trials like to produce. But as to perfect science of *natural Bodies* (not to mention *spiritual* Beings) we are, I think, so far from being capable of any such thing, that I conclude it lost labour to seek after it.

§ 29. The *third* cause of Ignorance is our want of tracing *those ideas we have*, or may have; and finding out those intermediate *ideas* which may show us what Habitude of Agreement or Disagreement they

they may have one with another: And thus many are ignorant of *mathematical* Truths, for want of application in enquiring, examining, and by due ways comparing those *ideas*.

§ 30. Hitherto we have examined the *Extent* of our Knowledge, in respect of the several sorts of Beings that are. There is another *Extent* of it, in respect of *Universality*, which will also deserve to be considered; and in this regard our Knowledge follows the Nature of our *ideas*. If the *ideas* are *abstract*, whose agreement or disagreement we perceive, our Knowledge is *universal*. For what is known of such general *ideas*, will be true of every particular thing in which that *Essence*, that is, that *abstract idea* is to be found: And what is once known of such *ideas*, will be perpetually, and for ever true. So that, as to all general Knowledge, we must search and find it only in our own minds: And it is only the examining of our own *ideas*, that furnishes us with that. Truths belonging to *Essences* of things (that is, to *abstract ideas*) are *eternal*, and are to be found out by the Contemplation only of those *Essences*; as the existence of things is to be known only from Experience. But I shall say more of this in the following Chapters, where I shall speak of *general*, and *real* Knowledge.



## C H A P. IV.

*Of the Reality of our Knowledge.*

## § 1.

I DOUBT not but my Reader, by this time, may be apt to think that I have been all this while only building a *Castle* in the Air; and be ready to object, If it be true, that all Knowledge lies only in the perception of the agreement or disagreement of our own *ideas*, the visions of an *Enthusiast*, and the reasonings of a *fever* man will be equally certain: It is no matter how things are, so a man observe but the agreement of his own imaginations, and talk conformably, It is all Truth, all Certainty. That an *Harpy* is not a *Centaur*, is by this way as certain Knowledge, and as much Truth, as that a Square is not a Circle. But *of what use is all this Knowledge of mens own Imaginations*, to a man that enquires after the reality of things?

§ 2. To which I answer, That if our Knowledge of our *ideas* should terminate in them, and reach no farther, where there is something farther intended, our most serious thoughts would be of little more use, than the *Reveries* of a crazy brain. But I hope, before I have done, to make it evident, that this way of Certainty by the Knowledge of our own *ideas*, goes a little farther than bare Imagination: And that all the Certainty of general Truths a man has, lies in nothing else but this Knowledge of our *ideas*.

## § 3.

§ 3. It is evident that the mind knows not things immediately, but by the intervention of the *ideas* it has of them. Our knowledge therefore is *real*, only so far as there is a conformity between our *ideas*, and the reality of things. But how shall we know when our *ideas* agree with things themselves? I answer, there be *two sorts* of *ideas* that we may be assured agree with things : These are,

§ 4. *First, Simple ideas* ; which since the mind can by no means make to itself, must be the effect of things operating upon the mind in a natural way ; and producing therein those perceptions, which by the will of our Maker, they are ordained and adapted to. Hence it follows, that *simple ideas* are not fictions of our fancies, but the natural and regular productions of things without us, really operating upon us ; which carry with them all the conformity our state requires, which is to represent things under those appearances they are fitted to produce in us. Thus the *idea* of *Whiteness*, as it is in the mind, exactly answers that power which is in any body to produce it there. And this conformity between our *simple ideas*, and the existence of things, is sufficient for real Knowledge.

§ 5. *Secondly*, All our *complex ideas*, except those of *Substances*, being *Archetypes* of the mind's own making, and not referred to the existence of things as to their originals, cannot want any conformity necessary to real Knowledge. For that which is not designed to represent any thing but itself, can never be capable of a wrong representation. Here the *ideas* themselves are considered as *Archetypes*, and things no otherwise regarded, than as they are conformable

to them. Thus the *Mathematician* considers the Truth and Properties belonging to a *Rectangle* or *Circle* only, as they are *ideas* in his own mind, which possibly he never found existing mathematically, that is, precisely true: Yet his knowledge is not only certain, but *real*; because real things are no farther concerned nor intended to be meant by any such propositions, than as things really agree to those *Archetypes* in his mind. It is true of the *idea* of a *Triangle*, that its three *Angles* are equal to two right ones; it is true also of a *Triangle* wherever it exists: What is true of those Figures, that have barely an *ideal* existence in his mind, will hold true of them also, when they come to have a *real* existence in Matter.

§ 6. Hence it follows, that *moral Knowledge* is as capable of *real Certainty* as *Mathematicks*: For *Certainty* being nothing but the Perception of the agreement or disagreement of our *ideas*, and *Demonstration* nothing but the Perception of such agreement by the intervention of other *ideas*; our *moral ideas* as well as *mathematical*, being *Archetypes* themselves, and so adequate or complete *ideas*, all the agreement or disagreement we shall find in them, will produce *real Knowledge* as well as in *mathematical Figures*. That which is requisite to make our Knowledge *certain*, is the clearness of our *ideas*; and that which is required to make it *real* is, that they answer their *Archetypes*.

§ 7 But it will here be said, that if *moral Knowledge* be placed in the Contemplation of our own *moral ideas*; and those be of our own making, what strange notions will there be of *Justice* and *Temperance*?



rance? What confusion of *Virtues* and *Vices*, if every man may make what *ideas* of them he pleases? *I answer*, No confusion nor disorder at all, in the things themselves, nor the reasonings about them; no more than there would be a change in the Properties of Figures, and their Relations one to another, if a man should make a *Triangle* with four Corners, or a *Trapezium* with four Right Angles; that is, in plain English, change the names of the Figures, and call that by one name, which is called ordinarily by another. The change of name will indeed at first disturb him, who knows not what *idea* it stands for: But as soon as the figure is drawn the consequences and demonstration are plain and clear. Just the same is it in *moral* Knowledge: Let a man have the *idea* of taking from others, without their consent, what they are justly possessed of, and call this Justice if he pleases; he that takes the name here, without the *idea* put to it, will be mistaken by joining another *idea* of his own to that name; but *strip* the *idea* of that name, or take it such as it is in the Speaker's mind; and the same things will agree to it, as if you called it Injustice.

§ 8. One thing we are to take notice of, That where *God*, or any other Law maker, has defined any *moral names*, there they have made the Essence of that *Species* to which that name belongs: And there it is not safe to apply, or use them otherwise. But in other cases it is bare impropriety of Speech, to apply them contrary to the common usage of the country they are used in.

§ 9. *Thirdly*, But the complex *ideas* which we refer to *Archetypes* without us, may differ from them,  
and

and so our Knowledge about them may come short of being real : And such are our *ideas* of *Substances*. These must be taken from something, that does or has existed, and not be made up of *ideas* arbitrarily put together without any real Pattern. Herein therefore is founded the Reality of our Knowledge concerning *Substances*, that all our complex *ideas* of them, must be such, and such only, as are made up of such simple ones, as have been discovered to coexist in Nature. And our *ideas* being thus true, though not perhaps very exact Copies, are the Subjects of *real* Knowledge of them. Whatever *ideas* we have, the agreement we find they have with others will be Knowledge. If those *ideas* be abstract, it will be *general* Knowledge : But to make it *real* concerning *Substances*, the *ideas* must be taken from the real Existence of things. Wherever therefore we perceive the agreement or disagreement of our *ideas*, there is *certain Knowledge* : And wherever we are sure those *ideas* agree with the Reality of Things, there is *certain real Knowledge*.

\*\*\*\*\*

## C H A P. V.

### *Of Truth in General.*

#### § 1.

**T**RUTH, in the proper import of the word, signifies the joining or separating of signs ; as the things signified by them, do agree or disagree one with another. The joining or separating of signs, is what we call *Propositions* ; so that *Truth* properly belongs only

only to *Propositions*; whereof there are *two* Sorts, *Mental* and *Verbal*, as there are *two* sorts of Signs commonly made use of, *Ideas* and *Words*.

§ 2. It is difficult to treat of *mental Propositions* without *verbal*: Because in speaking of *mental*, we must make use of *Words*, and then they become *verbal*. Again, men commonly in their thoughts and reasonings, use *words* instead of *ideas*; especially if the subject of their meditation contains in it *complex ideas*. If we have occasion to form *mental Propositions* about *White*, *Black*, *Circle*, &c. we can, and often do, frame in our minds the *ideas* themselves, without reflecting on the *Names*. But when we would consider, or make *Propositions* about the more *complex ideas*, as of a *Man*, *Vitriol*, *Fortitude*, *Glory*, &c. we usually put the *name* for the *idea*; because the *idea* these *names* stand for, being for the most part confused, imperfect, and undetermined; we reflect on the *names* themselves, as being more clear, certain, distinct, and readier to occur to our thoughts, than pure *ideas*; And so we make use of these *words* instead of the *ideas* themselves, even when we would meditate and reason within ourselves, and make tacit *mental Propositions*.

§ 3. We must then observe two sorts of *Propositions*, that we are capable of making. First, *mental Propositions*, wherein the *ideas* in our *Understandings* are put together, or separated by the mind, perceiving or judging of their agreement or disagreement. Secondly, *Verbal Propositions*, which are *words* put together, or separate in affirmative or negative Sentences: So that *Proposition* consists in joining or separating Signs: And *Truth* consists in putting together, or separating these

these Signs, according as the things they stand for agree or disagree.

§ 4. *Truth* as well as Knowledge may well come under the Distinction of *Verbal* and *Real*; that being only *Verbal Truth*, wherein Terms are joined according to the agreement or disagreement of the *ideas* they stand for, without regarding whether our *ideas* are such as really have, or are capable of having an Existence in Nature. But then it is they contain *real Truth*, when these Signs are joined, as our *ideas* agree; and when our *ideas* are such as we know, are capable of having an Existence in Nature; which in *Substances* we cannot know, but by knowing that such have existed.

§ 5. *Truth* is the marking down in words the agreement or disagreement of *ideas*, as it is. *Falseness* is the marking down in words the agreement or disagreement of *ideas*, otherwise than it is; and so far as these *ideas* thus marked by Sounds, agree to their *Archetypes*, so far only is the *Truth* *real*. The Knowledge of this *Truth* consists in knowing what *ideas* the words stand for, and the Perception of the agreement or disagreement of those *ideas*, according as it is marked by those words.

§ 6. Besides *Truth* taken in the strict Sense before mentioned, there are other sorts of *Truths*: As, 1<sup>st</sup>, *Moral Truth*, which is, speaking things according to the persuasion of our own minds. 2<sup>dly</sup>, *Metaphysical Truth*, which is nothing but the real Existence of things conformable to the *ideas* to which we have annexed their names.

These Considerations of *Truth* either having been before taken notice of, or not being much to our present

present purpose, it may suffice here only to have mentioned them.

\*\*\*\*\*

## CH A P. VI.

*Of universal Propositions, their Truth and Certainty.*

### § 1.

THE prevailing custom of using *Sounds* for *ideas*, even when men think and reason within their own breasts, makes *the consideration of Words and Propositions* so necessary a part of the *Treatise of Knowledge*, that it is very hard to speak intelligibly of the one, without explaining the other. And since *general Truths*, which with reason are most sought after, can never be well made known, and are *seldom apprehended, but as conceived and expressed in words*; it is not out of our way in the examination of our own Knowledge, to enquire into the *Truth and Certainty* of *universal Knowledge*.

§ 2. But it must be observed, that *Certainty* is two-fold, *Certainty of Truth*, and *Certainty of Knowledge*. *Certainty of Truth* is, when words are so put together in *Propositions*, as exactly to express the agreement or disagreement of the *ideas* they stand for; as really it is. *Certainty of Knowledge*, is to perceive the agreement or disagreement of *ideas* as expressed in any *Propositions*. This we usually call *Knowing*, or being certain of the *Truth* of any *Proposition*.

§ 3. Now because we cannot be certain of the *Truth* of any *general Proposition*, unless we know the  
precise

*precise bounds and extent of the Species its terms stand for* ; it is necessary we should know the Essence of each *Species*, which is that which constitutes and bounds it. This in all *simple ideas* and *modes* is not hard to do : For in these the *real* and *nominal* Essence being the same, there can be no doubt how far the *Species* extends, or what things are comprehended under each Term : Which it is evident are all that have an exact Conformity with the *ideas* it stands for, and no other. But in *substances* wherein a *real* Essence, distinct from the *nominal*, is supposed to constitute, and bound the *Species*, the extent of the general word is very uncertain ; because not knowing this real Essence, we cannot know what is, or is not of that *Species*, and consequently what may, or may not with Certainty be affirmed of it.

§ 4. Hence we may see that *the names of Substances, when made to stand for Species, supposed to be constituted by real Essences, which we know not, are not capable of conveying Certainty to the Understanding.* Of the truth of general Propositions made up of such Terms we cannot be sure. For how can we be sure that this or that Quality is in *Gold*, for instance, when we know not what is, or is not *Gold* ; that is, what has, or has not the *real Essence* of *Gold*, whereof we have no *idea* at all.

§ 5. On the other side, the names of Substances, when made use of for the *complex ideas* men have in their minds ; though they carry a clear and determinate Signification with them, *will not yet serve us to make many universal Propositions, of whose truth we can be certain* : because the *simple ideas*, out of which the *complex* are combined, carry not with them any  
disco-



verable Connexion of Repugnancy, but with a very few other *ideas*

§ 6. For instance, *All Gold is fixed*, is a Proposition we cannot be certain of, how universally soever it be believed : For if we take the term *Gold* to stand for a *real Essence*, it is evident we know not what particular Substances are of that *Species*, and so cannot with Certainty affirm any thing universally of *Gold*. But if we make the term *Gold* stand for a *Species*, determined by its *nominal Essence*, be its *complex idea* what it will ; for instance, a body *Yellow, Fusible, Malleable*, and *very heavy* ; no Quality can with Certainty be denied or affirmed universally of it, but what has a discoverable connexion, or inconsistency with that *nominal Essence* : *Fixedness*, for instance, having no necessary connexion that we can discover with any *simple idea* that makes the *complex* one, or with the whole combination together ; it is impossible that we should certainly know the truth of this Proposition, *All Gold is Fixed*. But is not this an universal certain Proposition, *All Gold is malleable* ? I answer, it is so, if *Malleableness* be a part of the *complex idea*, the word *Gold* stands for : But then here is nothing affirmed of *Gold*, but that, that Sound stands for an *idea*, in which *Malleableness* is contained. And such a sort of Truth and Certainty it is, to say a *Centaur* is *four footed*.

§ 7. I imagine amongst all the secondary Qualities of Substances, and the Powers relating to them, there cannot any two be named, whose necessary Coexistence or Repugnance to coexist can be certainly known, unless in those of the same Sense, which necessarily exclude one another. Thus by the Colour we can-

Q

not

not certainly know what *Smell, Taste, &c.* any body is of.

§ 8. It is no wonder then that *Certainty is to be found but in very few general Propositions concerning Substances* : Our knowledge of their Qualities and Properties goes very seldom farther than our Senses reach, or inform us. Inquisitive and observing men may, by Strength of Judgment, penetrate farther ; and on Probabilities taken from wary Observations and Hints well laid together, often guess right at what Experience has not yet discovered to them : But this is but *guessing* still ; it amounts only to *Opinion* ; and has not that Certainty which is requisite to *Knowledge*.

§ 9. To conclude : General Propositions, of what kind soever, are then only capable of Certainty, when the Terms used in them stand for such *ideas*, whose agreement or disagreement, as there expressed, is capable to be discovered by us. And we are then certain of their Truth or Falschhood, when we perceive the *ideas* they stand for, to agree or not agree, according as they are affirmed or denied one of another ; whence we may take notice, that general Certainty is never to be found but in our *ideas*. Whenever we go to seek it elsewhere in Experiment or Observations without us, our Knowledge goes not beyond particulars.

\*\*\*\*\*

## C H A P. VII.

*Of Maxims.*

## § 1.

THERE are a sort of Propositions, which under the name of *Maxims* and *Axioms*, have passed for Principles of Science : And because they are self-evident, have been supposed *innate*. ' But if those, who would persuade us that there are *innate* principles, had considered, separately, the parts out of which those propositions are made, they would not, perhaps, have been so forward to believe they were *innate*. Since, if the *ideas*, which made up those truths, were not, it was impossible \* that the propositions, made up of them, should be *innate*, or our knowledge of them be born with us. For if the *ideas* be not *innate*, there was a time when the mind was without those principles ; and then, they will not be *innate*, but be derived from some other original. *It is impossible for the same thing to be, and not to be*, is certainly (if there be any such) an *innate* principle. But the names *impossibility* and *identity* stand for two *ideas*, so far from being *innate*, or born with us, that I think it requires great care and attention to form them right in our understanding. They are so far from being brought into the world with us, so remote from the thoughts of infancy and childhood, that I believe, upon examination, it will be found, that many grown men want them.'

\* Book I. Chap. iv. § 1. and 3.

§ 2. It may be worth while likewise to enquire into the reason of the Evidence of these Maxims, and examine how far they influence our other Knowledge. Knowledge being but the Perception of the agreement or disagreement of *ideas*, where that agreement or disagreement is perceived immediately by itself, without the Intervention or Help of any other *ideas*, there our *Knowledge is self evident*: Which being so, not only *Maxims*, but an infinite number of other Propositions partake equally with them in this Self-evidence. For,

§ 3. In respect of *Identity* and *Diversity*, we may have as many Self-evident Propositions as we have distinct *ideas*. It is the first act of the mind, to know every one of its *ideas* by itself, and distinguish it from others. Every one finds in himself, that he knows the *ideas* he has; that he knows also when any one is in his Understanding, and what it is; and that when more than one are there, he knows them distinctly and unconfusedly, one from another; so that all affirmations, or negations concerning them, are made without any possibility of Doubt or Uncertainty; and must necessarily be assented to as soon as understood: That is, as soon as we have in our minds the *ideas* clear and distinct, which the Terms in the Proposition stand for. Thus a *Circle is a Circle*, *Blue is not Red*, are as self-evident Propositions, as those general ones, *What is is*, and *it is impossible for the same thing to be and not to be*; nor can the Consideration of these *Axioms* add any thing to the Evidence, or Certainty of our Knowledge of them.

§ 4. As to the agreement or disagreement of *Co-existence*, the mind has an immediate Perception of this,

this, but in very few. And therefore, in this sort we have very little *intuitive* Knowledge: Though, in some few Propositions we have. *Two Bodies cannot be in the same Place*, I think is a self-evident Proposition. The *idea* of fitting a place equal to the contents of its superficies being annexed to our *idea* of Body.

§ 5. As to the Relations of *Modes*, Mathematicians have framed many Axioms concerning that one Relation of Equality, as *Equals taken from Equals, the Remainder will be equal*, &c. which however received for Axioms, yet I think have not a clearer self-evidence than these, that *One and One are Equal to Two*: That *if from the five Fingers of one Hand, you take two, and from the five Fingers of the other Hand two, the remaining Numbers will be equal*. These and a thousand other such Propositions may be found in Numbers, which carry with them an equal, if not greater clearness than those mathematical Axioms.

§ 6. As to *real Existence*, since that has no connexion with any other of our *ideas*, but that of ourselves, and of a *first Being*; we have not so much as a demonstrative, much less a self-evident Knowledge, concerning the *real Existence* of other Beings.

§ 7 In the next place let us consider what influence these Maxims have upon the other parts of our Knowledge. The rules established in the schools, that all reasonings are *ex præcognitis et præconcessis*, seem to lay the Foundation of all other Knowledge in these Maxims, and to suppose them to be *præcognita*; whereby I think is meant two things: *ſt*, That these Axioms are those truths that are first

known to the mind: 2dly, That upon them the other parts of our Knowledge depend.

§ 8. *First*, That these Axioms are not the truths first known to the mind, is evident from experience: For who knows not that a *child perceives that a stranger is not its mother*, long before he knows, that it is impossible for the same thing to be and not to be. And how many truths are there about Numbers, which the mind is perfectly acquainted with, and fully convinced of, before it ever thought on these general Maxims? Of this the Reason is plain; for that which makes the mind assent to such Propositions, being nothing but the Perception it has of the agreement or disagreement of its *ideas*, according as it finds them affirmed or denied in words one of another; and every *idea* being known to be what it is, and every two distinct *ideas* not to be the same, it must necessarily follow, that such self evident truths must be first known, which consist of *ideas*, that are first in the mind; and the *ideas* first in the mind, it is evident, are those of particular things; from whence, by slow degrees, the Understanding proceeds to some few general ones, which being taken from the ordinary and familiar objects of Sense, are settled in the mind, with general names to them. Thus particular *ideas* are first received and distinguished, and so Knowledge got about them; and next to them the less general or specifick, which are next to particular ones.

§ 9. For *abstract ideas* are not so obvious or easy to *Children*, or the yet unexercised mind, as particular ones. If they seem so to grown *Men*, it is only because by constant and familiar use they are made so.

‘ For



‘ For when we nicely reflect upon them, we shall  
‘ find, that general *ideas* carry difficulty with them,  
‘ and do not so easily offer themselves as we are apt  
‘ to imagine. It is true, the mind, in this imper-  
‘ fect state, has need of such *ideas*, and makes all  
‘ the haste to them it can, for the conveniency of  
‘ communication and enlargement of knowledge; to  
‘ both which it is naturely very much inclined.’

§ 10. *Secondly*, From what has been said, it plainly follows, that these magnified *Maxims* are not the principles and *foundations* of all our other Knowledge: For if there be a great many other truths, as self-evident as they, and a great many that we know before them, it is impossible that they should be the *Principles*, from which we deduce all other Truths. Thus, that *One and Two are equal to Three*, is as evident, and easier known than that the *Whole is equal to all its Parts*. Nor after the Knowledge of this Maxim, do we know that *One and Two are equal to Three*, better, or more certainly than we did before. For if there be any odds in these *ideas*, the *ideas* of *Whole, and Parts*, are more obscure, or at least more difficult to be settled in the mind, than those of *One, Two and Three*. Either therefore all Knowledge does not depend on certain *Præcognita*, or general Maxims, called Principles; or else, such as these, (*That One and One are Two, that Two and Two are Four, &c.*) and a great part of Numeration will be so. To which if we add all the self-evident propositions that may be made about all our distinct *ideas*; Principles will be almost infinite, at least innumerable, which men arrive to the Knowledge of, at different ages; and a great many of those innate Principles, they

they never come to know all their lives. But whether they come in view early or later, they are all known by their native evidence, and receive no light, nor are capable of any proof one from another; much less the more particular, from the more general; or the more simple from the more compounded: The more simple and less abstract, being the most familiar, and the easier and earlier apprehended.

§ 11. These *general Maxims* then, are only of use in disputes, *to stop the mouths of wranglers*; but not of much use to the discovery of unknown Truths; or to help the mind forwards in its search after Knowledge. Several general Maxims, are no more than bare verbal Propositions; and teach us nothing but the respect and import of names, one to another; as, *The Whole is equal to all its parts*: What real Truth does it teach us more, than what the signification of the word *Totum*, or *whole*, does of itself import?

§ 12. But yet, *Mathematicians* do not without reason place this, and some other such amongst their *Maxims*; that their scholars having in the entrance perfectly acquainted their thoughts with these Propositions made in such general Terms, may have them ready to apply to all particular cases: Not that if they be equally weighed, they are more clear and evident, than the particular instances they are brought to confirm; but that being more familiar to the Mind, the very naming them is enough to satisfy the Understanding. But this I say, is more from our custom of using them, than the different evidence of the things.

§ 13.

§ 13. ' One thing further, I think, it may not be  
' amiss to observe concerning those general maxims,  
' that they do not prove the existence of things with-  
' out us; neither of these two self-evident principles,  
' viz. *what is is*, and *the same thing cannot be*, and  
' *be*, will serve to prove to us, that any, or what bo-  
' dies do exist: For that we are left to our senses,  
' to discover to us as far as they can. Those uni-  
' versal and self-evident principles, can assure us of  
' nothing that passes without the mind; they cannot  
' discover or prove to us the least knowledge of the  
' nature of substances, as they are found and ex-  
' ist without us, any farther than grounded on ex-  
' perience.'

§ 14. So that, if rightly considered, I think we may say, that where our *ideas* are clear and distinct, there is little, or no use at all of these *Maxims*, to prove the agreement or disagreement of any of them. He that cannot discern the Truth, or Falseness of such Propositions, without the help of these and the like Maxims, will not be helped by these Maxims to do it. He that needs any proof to make him certain, and give his assent to this Proposition, that *Two are equal to Two*, or that *White is not Black*, will also have need of a proof to make him admit that, *What is, is*, or, *That it is impossible for the same thing to be and not to be*.

§ 15. And as these *Maxims* are of little use, where we have clear and distinct *ideas*; so they are of dangerous use, where our *ideas* are confused, and where we use words that are not annexed to clear and distinct *ideas*; but to such as are of a loose and wandering signification, sometimes standing for one, and  
some.

sometimes for another *idea*, from which follows Mistake and Error, which these Maxims (brought as proofs to establish Propositions wherein the terms stand for confused and uncertain *ideas*) do by their authority confirm and rivet.

\*\*\*\*\*

## C H A P. VIII.

### *Of trifling Propositions.*

#### § 1.

**T**HERE are universal Propositions, which though they be certainly true, yet add no light to our Understandings, bring no increase to our Knowledge: Such are,

§ 2. *First*, All *purely identical Propositions*. These at first *blush*, appear to contain no instruction in them: For when we affirm the same term of itself, it shows us nothing but what we must certainly know before, whether such a Proposition be either made by, or proposed to us.

§ 3. *Secondly*, Another sort of trifling Propositions is, when a *part of the complex idea is predicated of the name of the whole*; a part of the definition, of the word defined, as, *Lead is a Metal, Man an Animal*. These carry no information at all, to those who know the complex *ideas*, the names *Lead*, and *Man* stand for: Indeed to a man that knows the signification of the word *Metal*, and not of the word *Lead*, it is a shorter way to explain the signification of the word *Lead*, by saying it is a *Metal*, than by enumerating

enumerating the simple *ideas* one by one, which make up the complex *idea* of *Metal*.

§ 4. Alike trifling it is to *predicate any one of the simple ideas of a complex ones of the name of the whole complex idea*; as *all Gold is fusible*; for fusibility being one of the simple *idea*, that goes to the making up the complex one, the sound *Gold* stands for; what can it be but playing with sounds, to affirm that of the name *Gold*, which is comprehended in its received signification? What instruction can it carry, to tell one that which he is supposed to know before? for I am supposed to know the signification of the word another uses to me, or else he is to tell me.

§ 5. The general Propositions that are made about *Substances*, if they are certain, are for the most part but *trifling*; and if they are instructive, are uncertain; and such as we have no Knowledge of their real truth, how much soever constant Observation and Analogy may assist our Judgments in *Guessing*. Hence it comes to pass, that one may often meet with very clear and coherent discourses, that amount yet to nothing. For names of substantial Beings, as well as others, having settled Significations affixed to them, may with great truth be joined negatively and affirmatively in Propositions, as their Definitions make them fit to be so joined; and Propositions consisting of such terms, may with the same clearness be deduced one from another, as those that convey the most real truths; and all this without any Knowledge of the nature or reality of things existing without us. Thus he that has learnt the following words, with their ordinary acceptations annexed to them, *viz. Substance, Man, Animal, Form, Soul, Vegetative, Sensative, Rational,*

onal, may make several undoubted Propositions about the Soul, without any Knowledge at all of what the Soul really is. And of this sort a man may find an infinite number of Propositions, Reasonings and Conclusions, in books of *Metaphysics*, *School-Divinity*, and some part of *Natural Philosophy*; and after all, know as little of *God*, *Spirits*, or *Bodies*, as he did before he set out.

§ 6. *Thirdly*, The worst sort of *Trifling* is, to use words *loosely and uncertainly*, which sets us yet farther from the certainty of Knowledge we hope to attain to by them, or find in them. That which occasions this, is, that men may find it convenient to shelter their ignorance or obstinacy, under the obscurity or perplexedness of their terms; to which, perhaps, inadvertency and ill-custom does in many men much contribute.

§ 7. To conclude, barely *verbal Propositions* may be known by these following marks.

§ 8. *First*, All Propositions, wherein two abstract terms are affirmed one of another, are barely about the Signification of Sounds. For since no abstract *idea* can be the same with any other, but itself; when its abstract name is affirmed of any other term, it can signify no more but this, that it may or ought to be called by that name; or that these two names signify the same *idea*.

§ 9. *Secondly*, All Propositions, wherein a part of the complex *idea*, which any term stands for, is predicated of that term, are only *verbal*: And thus all Propositions wherein more comprehensive terms called *Genera*, are affirmed of subordinate, or less comprehensive, called *Species*, or *Individuals*, are barely *verbal*.



*bal.* When by these two rules we examine the Propositions that make up the discourses we ordinarily meet with, both in and out of books; we shall perhaps find, that a greater part of them, than is usually suspected, are purely about the Signification of words, and contain nothing in them but the use and application of these Signs.

+++++

## CH A P. IX.

### *Of our Knowledge of Existence.*

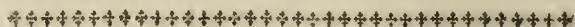
#### § 1.

**H**ITHERTO we have only considered the *Essences* of things, which, being only *abstract ideas*, and thereby removed in our thoughts from particular Existence, give us no Knowledge of *Existence* at all. We proceed now to enquire concerning our *Knowledge of the Existence* of things, and how we come by it.

§ 2. I say then, that we have the Knowledge of our *own Existence*, by *Intuition*: of the *Existence of God*, by *Demonstration*; and of *other Things*, by *Sensation*.

§ 3. As for our *own Existence*, we perceive it so plainly, that it neither needs, nor is capable of any proof. *I think, I reason; I feel pleasure and pain*: Can any of these be more evident to me than my *own Existence*? If I doubt of all other things, that very *Doubt* makes me perceive my *own Existence*, and will not suffer me to doubt of that. If I know I doubt, I have as certain a Perception of the *Thing*

Doubting, as of that *Thought* which I call *Doubt*. Experience then convinces us that we have an *intuitive Knowledge of our own Existence*; and an internal infallible Perception that we are. In every act of Sensation, Reasoning or Thinking, we are conscious to ourselves of our own Being, and in this matter come not short of the highest degree of *Certainty*.



## C H A P. X.

*Of our Knowledge of the Existence of a God.*

### § 1.

**T**HOUGH *God* has given us no *innate ideas* of himself, yet having furnished us with those faculties our minds are endowed with, he hath not *left himself without a witness*, since we have Sense, Perception, and Reason, and cannot want a clear proof of him, as long as we carry ourselves about us: Nor can we justly complain of our ignorance in this great point, since he has so plentifully provided us with means to discover, and know him, so far as is necessary to the end of our Being, and the great concernment of our Happiness. But though this be the most obvious truth that Reason discovers, yet it requires Thought and Attention; and the mind must apply itself to a regular deduction of it, from some part of our *intuitive Knowledge*; or else we shall be as ignorant of this as of other Propositions which are in themselves capable of clear Demonstration. To show therefore, that we are capable of knowing, that is, *being certain*, that *there is a God*; and how we may  
come

come by this certainty, I think we need go no farther than ourselves, and that undoubted Knowledge we have of our own *Existence*.

§ 2. I think it is beyond question, that *man has a clear perception of his own being*: He knows certainly that he exists, and that he is something.

§ 3. In the next place, man knows by an *intuitive* Certainty, that *bare nothing can no more produce any real being, than it can be equal to two right Angles*. If therefore we know there is some real Being, it is an evident Demonstration, that *from Eternity there has been something*; since what was not from Eternity, had a beginning; and what had a beginning, must be produced by something else.

§ 4. Next it is evident, that *what has its being from another, must also have all that which is in, and belongs to its being from another too*: All the powers it has must be owing to, and received from the same source. This eternal source then of all Being must be also the source and original of all Power; and so this *Eternal Being must be also the most Powerful*.

§ 5. Again, man finds in himself *Perception* and *Knowledge*: We are certain then that there is not only some Being, but some knowing, intelligent Being in the world. There was a time then, when there was no knowing Being, or else there has been *a knowing Being from Eternity*. If it be said, there was a time when that Eternal Being had no Knowledge; I reply, that then it is impossible there should have ever been any Knowledge. It being as impossible that things wholly void of Knowledge, and operating blindly, and without any perception, should produce a knowing Being, as it is that a Triangle

should make itself three Angles, bigger than two right ones.

§ 6. Thus from the consideration of ourselves, and what we infallibly find in our own constitutions, our reason leads us to the knowledge of this certain and evident Truth, that *there is an eternal, most powerful, and Knowing Being*, which, whether any one will call God, it matters not. The thing is evident, and from this *idea*, duly considered, will be deduced all those other *Attributes* we ought to ascribe to this *Eternal Being*.

From what has been said, it is plain to me, we have a more certain knowledge of the Existence of a *God*, than of any thing our senses have not immediately discovered to us. Nay, I presume I may say, that we more certainly know that there is a God, than that there is any thing else without us. When I say, we know, I *mean*, there is such a Knowledge within our reach, which we cannot miss, if we will but apply our minds to that, as we do to several other Enquiries.

§ 7. It being then unavoidable for all rational Creatures to conclude, that *something has existed from Eternity*; let us next see what *kind of Thing* that must be. There are but two sorts of Beings in the world, that man knows or conceives: 1<sup>st</sup>, Such as are purely material, without sense or perception, as the clippings of our beards, and parings of our nails. 2<sup>dly</sup>, Sensible perceiving Beings; such as we find ourselves to be. These two sorts we shall hereafter call *Cogitative* and *Incogitative* Beings: Which to our present purpose are better than *material* and *immaterial*.

§ 8. If then there must be something *Eternal*, it is very obvious to Reason, that it must necessarily be a *Cogitative* Being; because it is as impossible to conceive that ever bare *Incogitative* Matter should produce a *thinking* intelligent Being, as that nothing should of itself produce Matter. Let us suppose any parcel of matter *Eternal*, we shall find it in itself unable to produce any thing. Let us suppose its parts firmly at rest together: If there were no other Being in the world, must it not eternally remain so, a dead unactive lump? Is it possible to conceive it can add motion to itself, or produce any thing? *Matter* then by its own strength cannot produce in itself, so much as *Motion*. The motion it has, must also be from Eternity, or else added to Matter by some other Being, more powerful than Matter. But let us suppose Motion eternal too, yet Matter, *Incogitative Matter* and *Motion* could never produce *Thought*: *Knowledge* will still be as far beyond the power of *motion* and *matter* to produce, as matter is beyond the power of *Nothing* to produce. Divide *matter* into as minute parts as you will, vary the figure and motion of it, as much as you please, it will operate no otherwise upon other Bodies of proportionable bulk, than it did before this division. The minutest particles of Matter, knock, impel, and resist one another, just as the greater do, and that is all they can do, so that if we will suppose *Nothing Eternal*, *Matter can never begin to be*. If we suppose bare *Matter* without *Motion Eternal*, *Motion can never begin to be*. If we suppose only *Matter* and *Motion Eternal*, *Thought can never begin to be*: For it is impossible to conceive, that Matter, either with or without Motion,

could have originally in and from itself, Sense, Perception, and Knowledge, as is evident from hence, that then Sense, Perception, and Knowledge, must be a Property eternally inseparable from *Matter*, and every particle of it. Since therefore whatsoever is the first eternal being, must necessarily be *Cogitative*: And whatsoever is first of all things, must necessarily contain in it, and actually have, at least, all the perfections that can ever after exist, it necessarily follows, that the *First Eternal Being cannot be Matter*.

§ 9. If therefore it be evident that something necessarily must exist from Eternity, it is also as evident that, that *Something must necessarily be a cogitative Being*. For it is as impossible that *incogitative Matter* should produce a *cogitative Being*, as that nothing, or the negation of all Being, should produce a positive Being or Matter.

§ 10. This discovery of the *necessary Existence of an eternal Mind*, does sufficiently lead us into the Knowledge of God. For it will hence follow, that all other knowing Beings, that have a beginning, must depend on him, and have no other ways of Knowledge or extent of Power, than what he gives them: And therefore if he made those, he made also the less excellent pieces of this Universe, all *inanimate Bodies*, whereby his *Omniscience, Power, and Providence* will be established; and from thence all his other attributes necessarily follow.



\*\*\*\*\*

## CHAP. XI.

*Of our Knowledge of the Existence of other Things.*

### § 1.

THE Knowledge of our own Being we have by *Intuition*: The Existence of a God, *Reason* clearly makes known to us, as has been shown: The *Knowledge of the Existence* of any other thing, we can have only by Sensation; for their being no necessary Connexion of *real Existence* with any *idea* a man hath in his memory; nor of any other Existence, but that of God, with the Existence of any particular man; no particular man can know the *Existence* of any other Being, but only, when by actually operating upon him, it makes itself be perceived by him. The having the *idea* of any thing in our mind, no more proves the Existence of that thing, than the picture of a man evidences his being in the world, or the visions of a dream, make thereby a true history. It is therefore the actual receiving of *ideas* from without, that gives us notice of the Existence of other things, and makes us know that something doth exist at that time without us, which causes that *idea* in us, though perhaps we neither know nor consider how it does it; for it takes not from the *Certainty* of our Senses, and the *ideas* we receive by them, that we know not the manner wherein they are produced.

§ 2. *This Notice we have by our Senses of the existing of things without us, though it be not altogether*

ther so certain as *Intuition* and *Demonstration*, deserves the name of *Knowledge*, if we persuade ourselves that our faculties act and inform us right, concerning the Existence of those objects that affect them. But besides the assurance we have from our *Senses* themselves, that they do not err in the Information they give us of the Existence of things without us, we have other concurrent Reasons, As,

§ 3. *First*. It is plain those Perceptions are produced in us, by exterior Causes affecting our senses, because *those that want the Organs of any sense, never can have the ideas belonging to that sense* produced in their minds. This is too evident to be doubted, and therefore we cannot but be assured, that they come in by the Organs of that Sense, and no other way.

§ 4. *Secondly*, Because we find sometimes that we cannot avoid the having those ideas produced in our minds; when my eyes are shut, I can at pleasure recal to my mind the *ideas* of *Light* or the *Sun*, which former Sensations had lodged in my memory; but if I turn my eyes towards the *Sun*, I cannot avoid the *ideas* which the *Light* or the *Sun* then produces in me: Which shows a manifest difference between those *ideas* laid up in the memory, and such as force themselves upon us, and we cannot avoid having. And therefore it must needs be some *exterior* cause, whose efficacy I cannot resist, that produces those *ideas* in my mind, whether I will or no.

Besides, there is no body who doth not perceive the difference in himself, between actually looking upon the *Sun*, and contemplating the *idea* he has of it in his memory; and therefore he hath certain Knowledge,

Knowledge, that they are not both memory or fancy; but that actual Seeing has a cause without.

§ 5. *Thirdly*, Add to this, *that many ideas are produced in us with pain, which we afterwards remember without the least offence.* Thus the pain of *Heat* or *Cold*, when the *idea* of it is received in our minds, gives us no disturbance; which when felt was very troublesome; and we remember the pain of *Hunger*, *Thirst*, *Head Ache*, &c. without any pain at all; which would either never disturb us, or else constantly do it, as often as we thought of it, were there nothing more but *ideas* floating in our minds, and appearances entertaining our fancies, without the real Existence of things affecting us from abroad.

§ 6. *Fourthly*, Our senses in many cases bear witness to the truth of each others report, concerning the Existence of sensible things without us: He that doubts when he sees a *Fire*, whether it be *real*, may, if he please, feel it too; and, by the exquisite pain, he will be convinced, that it is not a bare *idea* or *phantom*.

§ 7. If after all this, any one will be so *sceptical*, as to distrust his senses, and to question the Existence of all things, or our Knowledge of any thing; let him consider that *the Certainty* of things existing in *rerum natura*, when we have *the testimony of our senses* for it, is not only *as great* as our frame can attain to, but *as our condition needs*. For our *faculties* being not suited to the full Extent of Being, nor a clear comprehensive knowledge of all things, but to the preservation of us, in whom they are, and accommodated to the use of life; they serve our purpose well enough, if they will but give us certain notice of  
those

those things, that are convenient or inconvenient to us. For he that sees a *Candle* burning, and has experimented the force of the flame, by putting his finger in it, will little doubt, that this is something existing without him, which does him harm and puts him to pain, which is assurance enough; when no man requires greater certainty to govern his actions by, than what is as certain as his actions themselves: So that this evidence is as great as we can desire, being as certain to us as our pleasure or pain, that is, *Happiness* or *Misery*, beyond which we have no concernment either of Knowing, or Being.

§ 8. In fine, when our senses do actually convey into our Understandings any *idea*, we are assured that there is something at that time *really Existing* without us. But *this Knowledge extends only as far as the present testimony of our senses*, employed about particular Objects, that do then affect them, *and no farther*. My seeing a *Man* a minute since, is no certain argument of his *present* Existence; ‘since there is no  
‘ necessary connexion of his existence a minute since,  
‘ with his existence now.

§ 9. As when our senses are actually employed about any Object, we know that it does exist; so by *our memory* we may be assured, that heretofore things that affected our *senses*, *have existed*: And thus we *have the Knowledge of the past Existence* of several things; whereof our *senses* having informed us, our memories still retain the *ideas*: And of this we are past all doubt, so long as we remember well.

§ 10. As to the Existence of spirits, our having *ideas* of them, does not make us know, that any such things do exist without us; or that there are any *finite*

nite spirits ; or any other spiritual beings but the Eternal God. We have ground from *Revelation*, and several other reasons, to believe with assurance, that there are such Creatures: But our senses not being able to discover them, we want the means of knowing their particular Existence ; for we can no more know that there are *finite spirits* really existing, by the *idea* we have of such beings, than by the *ideas* any one has of *Fairies* or *Centaurs*, he can come to know that things answering those *ideas*, do really exist.

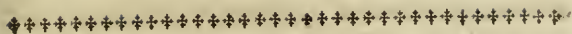
§ 11. Hence we may gather, that there are *two sorts* of Propositions, *One concerning the Existence* of any thing answerable to such an *idea* ; as that of an *Elephant*, *Phoenix*, *Motion*, or *Angel*, viz. Whether such a thing does any where exist : And this Knowledge is only of *Particulars*, and not to be had of any thing without us, but only of God, any other way than by our *senses*.

§ 12. *Another sort* of Proposition is, wherein is expressed the agreement or disagreement of our *abstract ideas*, and their dependence one on another. And these may be *universal* and certain : So having the *idea* of *God*, and my *self*, of *Fear* and *Obedience*, I cannot but be sure that *God is to be feared and obeyed by me* ; and this Proposition will be certain concerning *Man* in general ; if I have made an *abstract idea* of such a *species*, whereof I am one particular. But such a Proposition, how certain soever, proves not to me the Existence of men in the world ; but will be true of all such Creatures, whenever they do exist : Which *Certainty* of such general Propositions, depends  
on

on the agreement or disagreement discoverable in those *abstract ideas*.

§ 13. In the former case, our Knowledge is the consequence of the *Existence of things*, producing *ideas* in our minds by our senses : In the latter, the consequence of the *ideas* that are in our *minds*, and producing these general Propositions, many whereof are called *Eternæ veritates* ; and all of them indeed are so, not from being written all, or any of them in the minds of all men, or that they were any of them Propositions in any one's mind, till he having got the *abstract ideas*, joined or separated them by affirmation or negation : But wheresoever we can suppose such a Creature as *Man* is, endowed with such faculties, and thereby furnished with such *ideas* as we have ; we must conclude, he must needs, when he applies his thoughts to the consideration of his *ideas*, know the truth of certain Propositions, that will arise from the agreement or disagreement he will perceive in his own *ideas*. Such Propositions being once made about *abstract ideas*, so as to be true, they will, whenever they can be supposed to be made again, at any time past, or to come, by a mind having those *ideas*, always be true. For names being supposed to stand perpetually for the same *ideas* ; and the same *ideas* having immutably the same habitudes one to another ; Propositions concerning any *abstract ideas* that are once true, must needs be *eternal Verities*.





## CHAP. XII.

*Of the Improvement of our Knowledge.*

§ 1.

IT being the received opinion amongst men of letters that *maxims* are the foundations of all Knowledge, and that Sciences are each of them built upon certain *Præcognita*, from whence the Understanding was to take its rise, and by which it was to conduct itself in its inquiries in the matters belonging to that science, the beaten road of the schools has been to lay down in the beginning one or more general Propositions, called *Principles*, as foundations whereon to build the Knowledge, that was to be had of that subject.

§ 2. That which gave occasion to this way of proceeding, was, I suppose, the good success it seemed to have in *Mathematicks*, which, of all other sciences, have the greatest certainty, clearness, and evidence, in them. But if we consider it, we shall find that the great *advancement* and certainty of *real Knowledge* men arrived to in these *sciences*, was not owing to the influence of these Principles, but *to the clear distinct and compleat ideas* their thoughts were employed about; and the relation of *Equality* and *Excess*, so clear between some of them, that they had an *intuitive Knowledge*; and by that way to discover it in others: And this without the help of those *maxims*. For I ask, Is it not possible for a lad to know that his whole body is bigger than his little finger, but by virtue of

this Axiom, *the whole is bigger than the part* ; nor be assured of it, till he has learned that *maxim* ? Let any one consider from what has been elsewhere said, which is known first and clearest by most people, the *particular* instance, or the *general* rule ; and which it is that gives life and birth to the other. These *general rules* are but the comparing our more general and *abstract ideas*, which *ideas* are made by the mind, and have names given them, for the easier dispatch in its reasonings : But Knowledge began in the mind, and was founded on *Particulars*, though afterwards perhaps no notice be taken thereof : It being natural for the mind, to lay up those general notions, and make the proper use of them, which is to disburden the memory of the cumbersome load of *Particulars*.

§ 3. *The way to improve in Knowledge*, is not to swallow Principles, with an Implicit Faith, and without Examination, which would be apt to mislead men, instead of guiding them into truth ; but to *get and fix in our minds, clear and compleat ideas*, as far as they are to be had, *and annex to them proper and constant names* : And thus barely by considering our *ideas*, and *comparing them together*, observing their agreement or disagreement, their habitudes and relations, we shall get more true and clear Knowledge by the conduct of this one *Rule*, than by taking up *Principles*, and thereby putting our minds into the disposal of others.

§ 4. ‘ False or doubtful positions, relied upon as  
 ‘ unquestionable Maxims, keep those in the dark  
 ‘ from truth, who build on them. Such are usual-  
 ‘ ly the *Prejudices* imbibed from education, party,  
 ‘ reverence, fashion, interest, &c. This is the more  
 : which

' which every one sees in his brother's eye, but ne-  
 ' ver regards the beam in his own. To those who  
 ' are willing to get rid of this great hinderance of  
 ' Knowledge, to these who would shake off this  
 ' great and dangerous impostor *Prejudice*, who dres-  
 ' ses up falsehood in the likeness of truth, I shall  
 ' offer this one mark whereby *Prejudice* may be  
 ' known. He that is strongly of any opinion, must  
 ' suppose that his persuasion is built upon good  
 ' grounds; and that his assent is no greater than  
 ' what the evidence of the truth he holds forces him  
 ' to. Now if, after all his profession, he cannot  
 ' bear any opposition to his opinion, if he cannot  
 ' so much as give a patient hearing to the arguments  
 ' on the other side, he plainly confesses that it is  
 ' *Prejudice* governs him; and it is not the evidence  
 ' of truth, but some lazy anticipation, some beloved  
 ' presumption, that he desires to rest undisturbed in \*.

§ 5. ' He that would acquit himself in this case  
 ' as a lover of truth, must do two things that are not  
 ' very common nor very easy; *First, He must not be*  
 ' *in love with any opinion*, or wish it to be true, until  
 ' *he knows it to be so*: For nothing that is false can  
 ' deserve our good wishes, nor a desire that it should  
 ' have the force of truth; and yet nothing is more  
 ' frequent than this. *Secondly, He must do that*  
 ' *which he will find himself very averse to*, as judg-  
 ' ing the thing unnecessary, or himself incapable of  
 ' doing it. *He must try whether his principles be cer-*  
 ' *tainly true or not*, and how far he may safely rely  
 ' upon them. The inability I here speak of, is not

\* Locke's Conduct of the Understanding, § 10.

‘ any natural defect that makes men incapable of ex-  
 ‘ amining their principles. To such, rules of con-  
 ‘ ducting their understandings are useless, and that  
 ‘ is the case of very few. The great number is of  
 ‘ these whom the ill habit of never exerting their  
 ‘ thoughts has disabled : The powers of their minds  
 ‘ are starved by disuse, and have lost that strength  
 ‘ which nature fitted them to receive from exercise.  
 ‘ In these two things, *viz. an equal indifferency for all*  
 ‘ *truth* ; I mean the receiving it in the love of it as  
 ‘ truth ; and in the *examination of our principles*,  
 ‘ and not receiving any for such, till we are fully  
 ‘ convinced of their solidity, truth and certainty,  
 ‘ consists that *freedom* of the understanding, which  
 ‘ is necessary to a rational creature ; and without  
 ‘ which it is Conceit, Fancy, any thing rather than an  
 ‘ Understanding. And these two articles ought to  
 ‘ be particularly inculcated in education ; the business  
 ‘ whereof, in respect of knowledge, is not to perfect  
 ‘ a learner in all or any one of the Sciences, but to  
 ‘ give his mind that *freedom*, that disposition, and  
 ‘ these habits, that may enable him to attain a-  
 ‘ ny part of knowledge he shall apply himself to,  
 ‘ or stand in need of in the future course of his  
 ‘ life \*.’

§ 6. *We must* therefore, if we will proceed as *Rea-*  
*son* advises, *adapt our methods of Inquiry, to the na-*  
*ture of the ideas we examine*, and the truth we search  
 after. *General and certain Truths*, are only founded  
 in the habitudes and relations of *abstract ideas*.  
 Therefore a sagacious methodical application of our

\* Locke's Conduct of the Understanding, § 11. and 12.

thoughts for the finding out these Relations, is the only way to discover all that can with Truth and Certainty be put into general Propositions. By what steps we are to proceed in these, is to be learned in the schools of the *Mathematicians*, who from very plain and easy beginnings, by gentle degrees, and a continued chain of Reasonings, proceed to the discovery and demonstration of *Truths*, that appear at first sight beyond human Capacity. This, I think I may say, that if other *ideas* that are *real* as well as *nominal* Essences of their *species*, were pursued in the way familiar to *Mathematicians*, they would carry our thoughts farther and with greater Evidence and Clearness, than possibly we are apt to imagine. This gave me the Confidence to advance that Conjecture, which I suggest, *Chapter* the Third, *viz.* that *Morality is capable of Demonstration*, as well as *Mathematicks*: For *moral ideas* being real Essences, that have a discoverable Connexion and Agreement one with another, so far as we can find their Habitudes and Relations, so far we shall be possessed of *real and general Truths*.

§ 7. In our Knowledge of *Substances*, we are to proceed after a quite different method: The bare Contemplation of their *abstract ideas* (which are but *nominal* Essences) will carry us but a very little way, in the search of Truth and Certainty. Here *Experience* must teach us what *Reason* cannot: And it is by trying alone, that we can certainly know, what other Qualities coexist with those of our *complex idea*; (for instance) Whether that *Yellow heavy fusible Body*, I call *Gold*, be *malleable*, or no; which Experience (however it prove in that particular body we exa-

mine) makes us not certain that it is so in all, or any other *yellow, heavy, fusible* Bodies, but that which we have tried ; because it is no consequence one way or the other from our *complex idea* : The necessity or inconsistency of *Malleability*, has no visible Connexion with the combination of that *Colour, Weight, and Fusibility* in any Body. What I have here said of the *nominal* Essence of *Gold*, supposed to consist of a Body of such a determinate *Colour, Weight, and Fusibility*, will hold true, if other Qualities be added to it. Our reasonings from these *ideas* will carry us but a little way in the certain Discovery of the other *Properties*, in those Masses of Matter wherein all those are to be found. As far as our Experience reaches, we may have certain knowledge, and no farther.

§ 8. I deny not, but a man accustomed to rational and regular Experiments, shall be able to see farther into the nature of Bodies, and their unknown Properties, than one that is a stranger to them. But this is but *Judgment and Opinion*, not *Knowledge and Certainty*. This makes me suspect that *Natural Philosophy* is not capable of being made a *science* : From Experiments and historical Observations we may draw Advantages of Ease and Health, and thereby increase our stock of Conveniences for this Life : But beyond this, I fear our *Talents* reach not ; nor are our faculties, as I guess, able to advance.

§ 9. From whence it is obvious to conclude, that since our faculties are not fitted to penetrate the *real Essences* of Bodies, but yet plainly to discover to us the *Being* of a *God*, and the *Knowledge of ourselves* ; enough to give us a clear Discovery of our *Duty*, and  
great

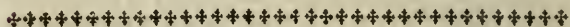


great Concernment ; it will become us, as rational Creatures, to employ our Faculties about what they are most adapted to, and follow the Direction of Nature, where it seems to point us out the way. For it is rational to conclude, that our proper Employment lies in those Inquiries, and that sort of Knowledge which is most suited to our natural Capacities. and carries in it our greatest interest, that is, *the condition of our eternal State* : And therefore it is, I think, that *morality is the proper science and business of mankind in general* (who are both concerned and fitted to search out their *Summum Bonum*) as several *Arts* conversant about the several parts of nature, are the lot and private talent of particular men, for the common use of human life, and their own particular Subsistence in this World.

§ 10. The ways to enlarge our Knowledge, as far as we are capable, seem to me to be *these two* : The *First*, is to get and settle in our minds, as far as we can, clear, distinct, and constant *ideas* of those things we would consider and know. For it being evident that our Knowledge cannot exceed our *ideas* ; where they are either imperfect, confused, or obscure, we cannot expect to have certain, perfect, or clear Knowledge. The *other* is the art of finding out the *intermediate ideas*, which may show us the Agreement or Repugnancy of other *ideas*, which cannot be immediately compared.

§ 11. That *these two* (and not the relying on *maxims*, and drawing consequences from some general Propositions) are the right method of improving our Knowledge, in the *ideas* of other *modes*, besides those of Quantity, the Consideration of *mathematical* Knowledge,

Knowledge will easily inform us. . Where, *First*, we shall find that he that has not clear and perfect *ideas* of those *Angles* or *Figures*, of which he desires to know any thing, is utterly thereby incapable of any Knowledge about them. Suppose a man not to have an exact *idea* of a *right Angle*, *Scalenum*, or *Traptzium*, and it is clear, that he will in vain seek any Demonstration about them. And *farther* it is evident, that it was not the influence of *maxims* or *principles*, that has led the masters of this *Science* into those wonderful Discoveries they have made. Let a man of good parts know all the *maxims* of *Mathematicks* never so well, and contemplate their Extent and Consequences as much as he pleases, he will by their assistance, I suppose, scarce ever come to know, that the square of the *Hypotenuse*, in a *right angled Triangle*, is equal to the squares of the two other sides. This, and other *mathematical* Truths have been discovered by the Thoughts, otherwise applied. The mind had other objects, other views before it, far different from those *maxims* which men well enough acquainted with those received *Axioms*, but ignorant of their method, who first made these Demonstrations, can never sufficiently admire.



### C H A P. XIII.

*Some further Considerations concerning Knowledge.*

#### § I.

OUR Knowledge, as in other things, so in this, has a great Conformity with our *sight*, that it is neither wholly necessary, nor wholly voluntary. Men that have

have senses cannot chuse but receive some *ideas* by them ; and if they have memory, they cannot but retain some of them ; and if they have any distinguishing Faculty, cannot but perceive the Agreement or Disagreement of some of them, one with another. As he that has Eyes, if he will open them by day, cannot but see some Objects, and perceive a difference in them ; yet he may chuse whether he will turn his Eyes towards an Object, curiously survey it, and observe accurately all that is visible in it. But what he does see, he cannot see otherwise than he does : It depends not on his *Will*, to see that *Black* which appears *Yellow*. Just thus it is with our *Understanding* : All that is voluntary in our Knowledge, is the *employing* or *withholding* any of our *Faculties* from this or that sort of *Objects* ; and a more or less accurate Survey of them : But they being employed, *our Will hath no power to determine the Knowledge of the mind*, one way or other. That is done only by the *Objects* themselves, as far as they are clearly discovered.

§ 2. Thus he that has got the *ideas* of *Numbers*, and hath taken the pains to compare *One*, *Two* and *Three*, to *Six*, cannot chuse but know that they are equal. He also that hath the *idea* of an intelligent, but weak and frail *Being*, made by, and depending on another, who is *Eternal*, *Omnipotent*, perfectly *wise* and *good*, will as certainly know, that *man* is to honour, fear, and obey *God*, as that the Sun shines when he sees it. But yet these Truths, being never so certain, never so clear, he may be ignorant of either or both of them, who will not take the pains to employ

ploy his Faculties as he should, to inform himself about them.

+++++

# C H A P. XIV.

## Of Judgment.

### § 1.

THE *Understanding Faculties* being given to man, not barely for Speculation, but also for the Conduct of his Life; a man would be at a great loss if he had nothing to direct him but what has the Certainty of *true Knowledge*. He that will not *eat* till he has Demonstration that it will nourish him; nor *stir*, till he is infallibly assured of success in his business, will have little else to do but *sit still* and *perish*.

§ 2. Therefore as *God* hath set some things in broad *Day-light*; as he has given us some certain Knowledge, though limited to a few things, in comparison, (probably as a taste of what *intellectual* creatures are capable of, to excite in us a desire and endeavour after a better State) so in the greatest part of our Concernment, he has afforded us only the *Twilight*, as I may so say, of *Probability*, suitable to that state of *Mediocrity* and *Probationership*, he has been pleased to place us in here.

§ 3. The Faculty which *God* has given *man* to enlighten him, next to certain Knowledge, is *Judgment*. whereby the mind takes its *idea* to agree or disagree, without perceiving a demonstrative Evidence in the Proofs. The mind exercises this Judgment,  
some-

sometimes out of *Necessity*, where demonstrative Proofs, and certain Knowledge are not to be had; and sometimes out of *Laziness*, Unskilfulness, or Haste, even where they are to be had.

§ 4. This Faculty of the Mind when it is exercised immediately about things, is called *Judgment*; when about truths delivered in words, is most commonly called *Affent*, or *Dissent*. Thus the mind has *two Faculties* conversant about Truth and Falsehood: 1<sup>st</sup>, *Knowledge*, whereby it certainly perceives, and is undoubtedly satisfied of the Agreement or Disagreement of any *ideas*. 2<sup>dly</sup>, *Judgment*, which is the putting *ideas* together, or separating them from one another in the mind, when their certain Agreement or Disagreement is not *perceived*, but *presumed* to be so. And if it so unites or separates them, as in reality things are, it is *right Judgment*.

\*\*\*\*\*

## C H A P. XV.

### *Of Probability.*

#### § 1.

**P**ROBABILITY is nothing but the appearance of the Agreement or Disagreement of two *ideas*, by the Intervention of Proofs, whose Connexion is not constant, and immutable; or is not perceived to be so; but is, or appears for the most part to be so, and is enough to induce the mind to judge the Proposition to be *true* or *false*, rather than the contrary.

§ 2. Of *Probability* there are degrees from the neighbourhood of *Certainty* and *Demonstration*, quite down

down to *Improbability* and *Unlikeliness*, even to the confines of *Impossibility* : And also degrees of *Assent* from certain Knowledge and what is next it, *full Assurance* and *Confidence*, quite down to *Conjecture*, *Doubt*, *Distrust*, and *Disbelief*.

§ 3. That Proposition then is *probable*, for which there are arguments or proofs to make it pass, or be received for *true*. The Entertainment the mind gives to this sort of Propositions, is called *Belief*, *Assent*, or *Opinion*. *Probability* then being to supply the defect of our Knowledge, is always conversant about Propositions, whereof we have no *Certainty*, but only some *Inducements* to receive them for true.

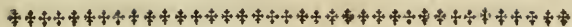
§ 4. The *Grounds* of it are in short *these two* following.

*First*, The *Conformity* of any thing with our own Knowledge, Experience, or Observation.

*Secondly*, The *Testimony* of others, vouching their Observation and Experience. In the *Testimony* of others, is to be considered ; 1<sup>st</sup>, The Number ; 2<sup>dly</sup>, The Integrity ; 3<sup>dly</sup>, The Skill of the Witnesses ; 4<sup>thly</sup>, The Design of the Author, if it be a Testimony cited out of a Book ; 5<sup>thly</sup>, The Consistency of the Parts and Circumstances of the Relation ; 6<sup>thly</sup>, Contrary Testimonies.

§ 5. The mind before it rationally assents or dissents to any probable Proposition, ought to examine all the grounds of Probability, and see how they make, more or less, for or against it ; and upon, a due balancing of the whole, reject or receive it, with a more or less firm Assent, according to the Preponderancy of the greater Grounds of Probability, on one side or the other.





## C H A P. XVI.

*Of the Degrees of Assent.*

## § 1.

THE *Grounds of Probability* laid down in the foregoing *Chapter*, as they are the foundations on which our *Assent* is built, so are they also the measure whereby its several *Degrees* are (or ought) to be regulated. Only we are to take notice, that no grounds of Probability operate any farther on the mind, which searches after Truth, and endeavours to judge right, than they appear; at least in the first Judgment, or Search that the mind makes. It is indeed in many cases impossible, and in most very hard, even for those who have admirable memories, to retain all the Proofs, which, upon a due Examination, made them embrace that side of the question. It suffices that they have once, with care and fairness, sifted the matter as far as they could; and having once found on which side the *Probability* appeared to them, they lay up the Conclusion in their memories, as a *Truth* they have discovered; and for the future remain satisfied with the Testimony of their memories, that this is the Opinion, that by the Proofs they have once seen of it, deserves such a *Degree* of their *Assent* as they afford it.

§ 2. It is unavoidable then that the memory be relied on in this case, and that *men be persuaded of several Opinions, whereof the Proofs are not actually in their thoughts*, nay, which perhaps they are not able

T

actually

actually to recal: Without this the greatest part of men, must be either *Scepticks*, or change every moment, when any one offers them arguments, which, for want of memory, they are not presently able to answer.

§ 3. It must be owned that mens *flicking to past Judgments*, is often the cause of great *Obstinacy* in Error and Mistake. But the fault is not, that they rely on their memories for what they have before well judged, but because they judged before they had well examined. Who almost is there that hath the Leisure, Patience, and Means to collect together, all the Proofs concerning most of the Opinions he has, so as safely to conclude that he has a clear and full view, and that there is no more to be alledged for his better Information? And yet we are forced to determine ourselves on one side or other: The conduct of our Lives, and the management of our great Concerns, will not bear Delay. For those depend for the most part on the determination of our Judgment in points wherein we are not capable of certain Knowledge, and wherein it is necessary for us to embrace one side or the other.

§ 4. The Propositions we receive upon inducements of *Probability*, are of *two sorts*: *First*, Concerning some particular Existence, or matter of *Fact*, which falling under Observation, is capable of *human Testimony*. *Secondly*, Concerning things, which being beyond the discovery of our *Senses*, are not capable of human Testimony.

§ 5. Concerning the first of these, viz *Particular matter of fact*.

*First*,

*First*, Where any particular thing, consonant to the constant Observation of ourselves and others in the like case, comes attested with the concurrent Reports of all that mention it, we receive it as easily, and build as firmly upon it, as if it were certain Knowledge. Thus, if all *Englishmen* who have occasion to mention it, should report, that it *froze* in *England* last Winter, or the like, I think a man would as little doubt of it, as that *Seven and Four are Eleven*.

The *first* and *highest* Degree of *Probability* then is, when the general consent of all men, in all ages, as far as can be known, concurs with a man's own constant Experience in the like cases, to confirm the truth of any particular matter of Fact, attested by fair Witnesses: Such are the stated *Constitutions* and *Properties* of Bodies, and the regular Proceedings of *Causes* and *Effects* in the ordinary course of *Nature*; this we call an *Argument* from the nature of things themselves. For what we and others always observe to be after the same manner, we conclude with Reason, to be the effects of steady and regular *Causes*, though they come not within the reach of our Knowledge. As that Fire warmed a man, or made *Lead fluid*; that *Iron* sunk in water, swam in quick silver. A relation affirming any such thing to have been, or a predication that it will happen again in the same manner, is received without doubt or hesitation: And our *Belief* thus grounded, rises to *Assurance*.

§ 6. *Secondly*, The next degree of *Probability*, is when, by my own Experience, and the agreement of all others, that mention it, a *thing* is found to be for the most part so; and that the particular instance of

it is attested by many and undoubted *witnesses*. Thus *History* giving us such an account of men in all ages, and my own Experience confirming it, that most men prefer their own private Advantage, to the publick. If all Historians that writ of *Tiberius*, say that he did so, it is extremely probable : And in this case, our *Assent* rises to a degree which we may call *Confidence*.

§ 7. *Thirdly*, In matters happening indifferently, as that a *Bird* should fly this or that way : When any particular matter of Fact comes attested by the concurrent Testimony of unsuspected *Witnesses*, there our *Assent* is also unavoidable. Thus, that there is in *Italy* such a city as *Rome* ; that about One thousand and seven hundred years ago, there lived such a man in it as *Julius Caesar*, &c. A man can as little doubt of this, and the like, as he does of the Being and Actions of his own Acquaintance, whereof he himself is a witness.

§ 8. *Probability*, on these grounds, carries so much Evidence with it, that it leaves as little liberty to believe or disbelieve, as Demonstration does, whether we will know or be ignorant. But the Difficulty is, when Testimonies contradict common Experience, and the Reports of Witnesses clash with the ordinary course of Nature, or with one another. Here diligence, attention, and exactness is required to form a *right Judgment*, and to proportion the *Assent* to the Evidence and *Probability* of the thing, which rises and falls, according as the two foundations of Credibility favour, or contradict it. These are liable to such variety of contrary Observations, Circumstances, Reports, Tempers, Designs, Oversights, &c. of Reporters, that it is impossible to reduce to precise rules  
the

the various degrees wherein men give their *Assent*. This in general may be said, that as the *Proofs*, upon due Examination, shall to any one appear in a greater, or less degree, to preponderate on either side, so they are fitted to produce in the mind, such different Entertainments, as are called *Belief*, *Conjecture*, *Guess*, *Doubt*, *Wavering*, *Distrust*, *Disbelief*, &c.

§ 9. ' I think it may not be amiss to take notice  
' of a rule observed in the law of *England*, which is,  
' that though the attested copy of a record be good  
' proof, yet the copy of a copy never so well attest-  
' ed, and by never so credible witnesses, will not be  
' admitted as a proof in judicature. This practice,  
' if it be allowable in the decisions of right and  
' wrong, carries this observation along with it,' viz.  
That any Testimony, the farther off it is removed from the original truth, the less force it has: And in *traditional truths*, each remove weakens the force of the *Proof*. There is a *Rule* quite contrary to this, advanced by some men, who look on *Opinions* to gain force by growing *older*. Upon this ground, Propositions evidently false or doubtful in their first beginning, come by an inverted *Rule of Probability*, to pass for *authentick Truths*; and those which deserved little Credit from the mouths of their first Relators, are thought to grow *venerable* by Age, and are urged as undeniable.

§ 10 But certain it is, that no *Probability* can rise above its first *Original*. What has no other evidence than the single Testimony of *one Witness*, must stand or fall by his *only* Testimony, though afterwards cited by Hundreds of others; and is so far from receiving any strength thereby, that it becomes

the weaker. Because Passion, Interest, Inadvertency, Mistake of his Meaning, and a thousand odd Reasons, which capricious mens minds are acted by, may make one man quote another's words or meaning wrong. This is certain, that what in one age was affirmed upon slight grounds, can never after come to be more valid in future ages by being often repeated.

§ 11. *The second sort of Probability*, is concerning things *not falling under the reach of our senses, and therefore not capable of Testimony*: And such are,

§ 12. *First*, The Existence, Nature, and Operations of *finite immaterial Beings* without us, as *Spirits, Angels, &c.* or the Existence of *material Beings*, such as for their smallness or remoteness, our *Senses* cannot take notice of: As whether there be any *Plants, Animals, &c.* in the *Planets*, and other mansions of the vast Universe.

§ 13. *Secondly*, Concerning the manner of Operation in most parts of the works of *Nature*; wherein, though we see the sensible *Effects*, yet their Causes are unknown, and we perceive not the ways and manner how they are produced. We see *Animals* are generated, nourished, and move; the *Loadstone* draws *Iron, &c.* but the causes that operate, and the manner they are produced in, we can only guess, and probably conjecture. In these matters *Analogy* is the only help we have; and it is from that alone we draw all our grounds of *Probability*. Thus observing, that the bare rubbing of two Bodies violently upon one another, produces *Heat*, and very often *Fire*; we have reason to think that what we call *Heat* and *Fire*, consists, in a certain violent agitation of the imperceptible minute parts of the burning Matter.



Matter. This sort of *Probability*, which is the best conduct of rational Experiments, and the rise of *Hypotheses*, has also its use and influence. And a wary reasoning from *Analogy* leads us often into the discovery of *Truths*, and useful *Deductions*, which would otherwise lie concealed.

§ 14. Though the common experience, and the ordinary course of things, have a mighty influence on the minds of men, to make them give or refuse credit, to any thing proposed to their belief; yet there is one case wherein the strangeness of the fact lessens not the *Assent* to a fair Testimony given of it. For where such supernatural *Events* are suitable to ends aimed at by him, who has the power to change the course of Nature; there under such circumstances they may be the fitter to procure belief, by how much the more they are beyond, or contrary to ordinary observation. This is the proper case of *miracles*, which, well attested, do not only find credit themselves, but give it also to other *truths*.

§ 15. There are Propositions that challenge the highest degree of our *Assent* upon bare Testimony, whether the thing proposed agree or disagree with common Experience, and the ordinary course of things or no: The reason whereof is, because the Testimony is of such *an one*, as cannot deceive nor be deceived; and that is *God* himself. This carries with it Certainty beyond Doubt, Evidence beyond Exception. This is called by a peculiar name, *Revelation*, and our *assent* to it, *Faith*; which has as much Certainty in it, as our Knowledge itself: and we may as well doubt of our own *Being*, as we can, whether any *Revelation* from *God* be *true*. So that *Faith* is  
a let-

a settled and sure Principle of *Assent* and *Assurance*, and leaves no Manner of Room for Doubt or Hesitation; only we must be sure, that it be a divine *Revelation*, and that we understand it right; else we shall expose ourselves to all the extravagancy of *Enthusiasm*, and all the error of wrong Principles, if we have *Faith* and *Assurance* in what is not *divine Revelation*.

\*\*\*\*\*

## C H A P. XVII.

### *Of Reason.*

#### § 1.

THE word *Reason*, in *English*, has different Significations. Sometimes it is taken for *true* and *clear Principles*: Sometimes for *clear* and *fair Deductions* from those Principles: Sometimes for the *Cause*, and particularly for the *final Cause*; but the Consideration I shall have of it here, is, as it stands for a *Faculty*, whereby *Man* is supposed to be distinguished from *Beasts*; and wherein it is evident, he much surpasses them.

§ 2. Reason is necessary, both for the enlargement of our Knowledge, and regulating our Assent: For it hath to do both in Knowledge and Opinion, and is necessary and assisting to all our other intellectual Faculties; and, indeed, contains *two* of them, viz *First*, *Sagacity*, whereby it finds intermediate *ideas*. *Secondly*, *Illation*, whereby it so orders and disposes of them, as to discover what connexion there is in each link of the Chain, whereby the extremes are held together,

gether, and thereby, as it were, to draw into view the Truth sought for; which is that we call *Illation* or *Inference*: And consists in nothing, but the Perception of the Connexion there is between the *ideas*, in each step of the Deduction, whereby the mind comes to see, either the certain agreement or disagreement of any two *ideas*, as in *Demonstration*, in which it arrives at Knowledge: Or their probable Connexion, on which it gives or with holds its *Assent*, as in *Opinion*.

§ 3. *Sense* and *Intuition* reach but a little way: The greatest part of our Knowledge depends upon Deductions and intermediate *ideas*. In those cases where we must take Propositions for true, without being certain of their being so, we have need to find out, examine, and compare the grounds of their *Probability*: In both cases, the faculty which finds out the means, and rightly applies them to discover Certainty in the one, and Probability in the other, is that which we call *Reason*. So that in Reason we may consider these *four Degrees*; 1<sup>st</sup>, The discovering and finding out of Proofs. 2<sup>dly</sup>, The regular and methodical Disposition of them, and laying them in such order, as their Connexion may be plainly perceived. 3<sup>dly</sup>, The perceiving their Connexion. 4<sup>thly</sup>, The making a right Conclusion.

§ 4. There is one thing more which I shall desire to be considered concerning *Reason*, and that is, whether *Syllogism*, as is generally thought, be the proper instrument of it; and the usefulest way of exercising this faculty. The Causes I have to doubt of it, are these.

§ 5. *First*, Because *Syllogism* serves our *Reason* but in one only of the forementioned parts of it, and that is to show the Connexion of the Proofs of any one Instance, and no more : But in this it is of no great use, since the mind can perceive such Connexion, where it really is, as easily, nay, perhaps better without it. We may observe that there are many men that reason exceeding clear and rightly, who know not how to make a *Syllogism* : And I believe scarce any one makes *Syllogisms* in reasoning within himself. Indeed, sometimes they may serve to discover a fallacy, hid in a *rhetorical* Flourish ; or by stripping an absurdity of the cover of Wit and good Language, show it in its naked Deformity. But the Weakness or Fallacy of such a loose Discourse it shows, by the artificial form it is put into, only to those who have thoroughly studied *Mode* and *Figure*, and have so examined the many ways, that three Propositions may be put together, as to know which of them does certainly conclude right, and which not, and upon what grounds it is that they do so. But they who have not so far looked into those forms, are not sure by virtue of *Syllogism* that the Conclusion certainly follows from the Premises. The mind is not taught to reason by these *Rules* ; it has a native faculty to perceive the Coherence or Incoherence of its *ideas*, and can range them right, without any such perplexing *Repetitions*.

§ 6 And to show the weakness of an argument, there needs no more but to strip it of the superfluous *ideas*, which, blended and confounded with those on which the Inference depends, seem to show a Connexion where there is none, or at least do hinder the  
Discovery

Discovery of the want of it; and then to lay the naked *ideas* on which the force of the Argumentation depends in their due order; in which position the mind taking a view of them, sees what Connexion they have, and so is able to judge of the Inference without any need of Syllogism at all.

§ 7. *Secondly*, Because Syllogisms are not less liable to Fallacies than the plainer ways of Argumentation: And for this I appeal to common Observation, which has always found these artificial methods of Reasoning more adapted to catch and entangle the mind, than to instruct and inform the Understanding. And if it be certain, that Fallacy can be couched in Syllogisms, as it cannot be denied, it must be something else, and not Syllogism, that must discover them. But if men skilled in, and used to Syllogisms, find them assisting to their Reason, in the Discovery of Truth, I think they ought to make use of them. All that I aim at is, that they should not ascribe more to these Forms than belongs to them; and think that men have no use, or not so full a use of their reasoning faculty without them.

§ 8. But however it be in Knowledge, I think it is of far less or no use at all in *Probabilities*: For the *Affent* there being to be determined by the Preponderancy, after a due weighing of all the Proofs on both sides, nothing is so unfit to assist the mind in that, as *Syllogism*; which running away with one assumed *Probability*, pursues that till it has led the mind quite out of sight of the thing under consideration.

§ 9. But let it help us (as perhaps may be said) in *convincing men of their errors or mistakes*; yet still it  
fails

fails our reason in that part, which, if not its highest perfection, is yet certainly its hardest task; and that which we most need its help in, and that is, *The finding out of Proofs, and making new Discoveries.* This way of Reasoning discovers no new Proofs, but is the art of marshalling and ranging the old ones we have already. A man knows first, and then he is able to prove *syllogistically*; so that *Syllogism* comes after Knowledge; and then a man has little or no need of it. But it is chiefly by the finding out those *ideas* that show the Connexion of distant ones, that our stock of Knowledge is increased; and that useful arts and sciences are advanced.

§ 10. 'It is fit, before I leave this subject, to take notice of one manifest mistake in the rules of Syllogism, *viz.* That no syllogistical reasoning can be right and conclusive, but what has, at least, one general proposition in it. As if we could not reason about particulars. Whereas, in truth, the immediate object of all our reasoning, is nothing but particulars. Every man's reasoning is only about the *ideas* existing in his own mind, which are truly, every one of them particular existences; and our reasoning about other things, is only as they correspond with those our particular *ideas*.'

§ 11. *Reason*, though of a very large extent fails us in several Instances: As, 1<sup>st</sup>, *Where our ideas fail.* 2<sup>dly</sup>, It is often at a loss, *because of the Obscurity, Confusion, or Imperfection of the ideas it is employed about.* Thus having no perfect *idea* of the least Extension of *matter*, nor of *Infinity*, we are at a loss about the divisibility of *Matter*. 3<sup>dly</sup>, Our *Reason* is often at a stand, *because it perceives not those ideas which*



which would serve to shew the certain or probable agreement or disagreement of any two other ideas. 4thly, Our Reason is often engaged in absurdities and difficulties, by proceeding upon false Principles, which being followed, lead men into Contradictions to themselves, and Inconsistency in their own Thoughts. 5thly, Dubious words, and uncertain signs often puzzle men's Reason, and bring them to a Nonplus.

§ 12. Though the deducing one Proposition from another be a great part of Reason, and that which it is usually employed about : Yet the principal act of Ratiocination is the finding the agreement or disagreement of two ideas, one with another, by the intervention of a third. As a man, by a yard, finds two houses to be of the same length, which could not be brought together to measure their Equality by *juxta position*. Words have their consequences as the signs of such ideas : And things agree, or disagree, as really they are ; but we observe it only by our ideas.

§ 13. In Reasoning men ordinarily use four sorts of Arguments.

The First, is to allege the Opinions of men, whose parts, learning, eminency, power, or some other cause, has gained a name, and settled their Reputation in the common esteem with some kind of Authority. This may be called *Argumentum ad Verecundiam*.

§ 14. Secondly, Another way is, to require the Adversary to admit what they allege as a Proof, or to assign a better. This I call *Argumentum ad Ignorantiam*.

§ 15. A *Third* way, is to press a man with consequences drawn from his own Principles or Concessions. This is already known under the name of *Argumentum ad hominem*.

§ 16. *Fourthly*, the using of Proofs drawn from any of the foundations of Knowledge or Probability. This I call *Argumentum, ad Judicium*. This alone of all the four, brings true Instruction with it, and advances us in our way to Knowledge. For 1<sup>st</sup>, It argues not another man's Opinion to be right, because I, out of respect, or any other consideration but that of Conviction, will not contradict him. 2<sup>dly</sup>, It proves not another man to be in the right way, nor that I ought to take the same with him, because I know not a better. 3<sup>dly</sup>, Nor does it follow, that another man is in the right way, because he has shown me that I am in the wrong. This may dispose me perhaps for the reception of truth, but he'sps me not to it; that must come from *Proofs* and *Arguments*, and Light arising from the Nature of Things themselves; not from my Shame facedness, Ignorance, or Error.

§ 17. By what has been said of *Reason*, we may be able to make some guess at the distinction of things, into those that are *according to, above, and contrary to Reason*. 1<sup>st</sup>, *According to Reason*, are such Propositions, whose truth we can discover, by examining and tracing those *ideas* we have from *Sensation* and *Reflection*, and by natural deduction find to be true or probable. 2<sup>dly</sup>, *Above Reason*, are such Propositions, whose *Truth* or *Probability* we cannot by *Reason* derive from those Principles: 3<sup>dly</sup>, *Contrary to Reason* are such Propositions as are inconsistent with,  
or

or irreconcilable to, our clear and distinct *ideas*. Thus the *Existence of one God*, is according to *Reason*: The *Existence of more than one God*, contrary to *Reason*: The *Resurrection of the Body* after death, above *Reason*. Above *Reason*, may be also taken in a double sense, *viz.* Above *Probability*, or, above *Certainty*. In that large sense also, *Contrary to Reason*, is I suppose, sometimes taken.

§ 18. There is another use of the word *Reason*, wherein it is *opposed to Faith*; which, though authorised by common use, yet is it in itself a very improper way of speaking: For *Faith* is nothing but a firm *Assent* of the mind; which if it be regulated as is our duty, cannot be afforded to any thing but upon good *Reason*, and so cannot be opposite to it. He that believes without having any Reason for Believing, may be in love with his own fancies; but neither seeks *Truth* as he ought, nor pays the Obedience due to his Maker, who would have him use those discerning faculties he has given him, to keep him out of Mistake and Error. But since *Reason* and *Faith* are by some men opposed, we will so consider them in the following *Chapter*.

\*\*\*\*\*

## C H A P. XVIII.

*Of Faith and Reason, and their distinct Provinces.*

### § 1.

REASON, as contradistinguished to *Faith*, I take to be the discovery of the *Certainty* or *Probability* of such Propositions or Truths which the

mind arrives at by deductions made from such *ideas*, which it has got by the use of its natural faculties, *viz.* by *Sensation* or *Reflection*.

*Faith*, on the other side, is the assent to any Proposition, upon the credit of the proposer, as coming immediately from *God*; which we call *Revelation*: Concerning which we must observe,

§ 2. *First*, That no man inspired by *God*, can by any *Revelation* communicate to others, any new simple ideas, which they had not before from *Sensation* or *Reflection*: Because words, by their immediate operation on us, cannot cause other *ideas*, but of their natural sounds, and as *signs* of latent *ideas* they can only recal to our Thoughts those *ideas*, which to us they have been wont to be signs of; but cannot introduce any new, and formerly unknown *simple ideas*. The same holds in all other *signs*, which cannot signify to us things, of which we have never before had any *idea* at all. For our *simple ideas* we must depend wholly on our natural faculties, and can by no means receive them from *traditional Revelation*; I say *traditional*, in distinction to *original Revelation*. By the *one*, I mean that impression which is made immediately by *God* on the mind of any man, to which we cannot set any bounds. And by the *other*, those impressions delivered over to others in words, and the ordinary ways of conveying our Conceptions one to another.

§ 3. *Secondly*, I say, that the same Truths may be discovered by *Revelation*, which are discoverable to us by *Reason*; but in such there is little need or use of *Revelation*; *God* having furnished us with natural means to arrive at the Knowledge of them: And

Truths

Truths discovered by our natural faculties, are more certain, than when conveyed to us by *traditional Revelation*. For the Knowledge we have, that this *Revelation* came at first from *God*, can never be so sure as the Knowledge we have from the clear and distinct Perception of the agreement and disagreement of our own *ideas*. This also holds in matters of fact, knowable by our senses: As the *history* of the *Deluge* is conveyed to us by Writings, which had their original from Revelation; and yet no body, I think, will say he has as certain and clear Knowledge of the *Flood*, as *Noah* that saw it, or that he himself would have had, had he then been alive and seen it. For he has no greater Assurance, than that of his *Senses*, that it is writ in the Book, supposed to be writ by *Moses* inspired. But he has not so great an Assurance that *Moses* writ that Book, as if he had seen *Moses* write it; so that the Assurance of its being a *Revelation*, is still less than the Assurance of his *Senses*.

§ 4. *Revelation* cannot be admitted against the clear evidence of *Reason*. For since no evidence of our faculties, by which we receive such a *Revelation*, can exceed, if equal, the Certainty of our *intuitive* Knowledge; we can never receive for a Truth any thing that is *directly contrary to our clear and distinct Knowledge*. Thus the *ideas of one body and one place* do so clearly agree, that we can never assent to a Proposition that affirms *the same body to be in two distinct places at once*; however, it should pretend to the authority of a *divine Revelation*: Since the evidence, 1<sup>st</sup>, That we deceive not ourselves in ascribing it to *God*: Secondly, That we understand it right, can never be so great as the evidence of our own *intuitive*

U 3

Knowledge,

Knowledge, whereby we discern it impossible for *the same body to be in two places at once.*

In Propositions therefore, contrary to our distinct and clear *ideas*, it will be in vain to urge them as matters of *Faith*. For *Faith* can never convince us of any thing that contradicts our Knowledge. Because, though *Faith* be founded upon the Testimony of *God*, who cannot lie, yet we cannot have an Assurance of the Truth of its being a *divine Revelation*, greater than our Knowledge. For if the mind of man can never have a clearer evidence of any thing to be a *divine Revelation*, than it has of the principles of its own Reason; it can never have a ground to quit the clear evidence of its Reason, to give place to a Proposition, whose *Revelation* has not a greater evidence than those principles have.

In all things therefore where we have clear evidence from our *ideas*, and the principles of Knowledge above-mentioned *Reason* is the proper Judge; and *Revelation* cannot in such cases invalidate its decrees; nor can we be obliged, where we have the clear and evident sentence of Reason, to quit it for the contrary Opinion, under a pretence that it is Matter of *Faith*. which can have no authority against the plain and clear dictates of Reason. But,

§ 5. Thirdly, There being many things of which we have but imperfect notions, or none at all; and other things, of whose past, present, or future Existence, by the natural use of our faculties, we can have no Knowledge at all: These being beyond the discovery of our faculties, and above Reason, when revealed, become the proper Matter of *Faith*. Thus, that part of the angels rebelled against *God*; that the  
bodies



bodies of men shall rise and live again, and the like, are purely *Matters of Faith*, with which *Reason* has directly nothing to do.

*First*, then, Whatever Proposition is revealed, of whose truth our mind, by its natural faculties and notions cannot judge, that is purely *Matter of Faith*, and *above Reason*.

§ 6. *Secondly*, All Propositions, whereof the mind by its natural faculties, can come to determine and judge from natural acquired *ideas*, are *Matter of Reason*; but with this difference; that in those concerning which it has but an uncertain evidence, and so is persuaded of their Truth only upon probable grounds: In such, I say, an *evident Revelation ought to determine our Assent* even against *Probability*. Because the mind, not being certain of the Truth of that it does not evidently know, is bound to give up its *Assent* to such a Testimony, which it is satisfied comes from one, who cannot err, and will not deceive. But yet it still belongs to *Reason* to judge of the Truth of its being a *Revelation*, and of the Signification of the Words wherein it is delivered.

§ 7. Thus far the dominion of *Faith* reaches; and that without any violence to *Reason*, which is not injured or disturbed, but assisted and improved by new discoveries of Truth, coming from the *eternal Fountain* of all Knowledge. Whatever *God* hath revealed is certainly true; no doubt can be made of it. This is the proper Object of *Faith*: But whether it be a divine *Revelation* or no, *Reason* must judge; which can never permit the mind to reject a greater Evidence, to embrace what is less evident, nor prefer less Certainty to the greater. There can be no Evidence,

dence, that any traditional *Revelation* is of divine origin, in the words we receive it, and the sense we understand it, so clear and so certain, as that of the Principles of *Reason*: And therefore, *Nothing that is contrary to the clear and self evident dictates of Reason, has a right to be urged or assented to, as a matter of Faith, wherein Reason has nothing to do* Whatsoever is divine *Revelation*, ought to over-rule all our Opinions, Prejudices, and Interests, and hath a right to be received with a full *Assent*. Such a Submission as this, of our Reason to Faith, takes not away the Land-marks of Knowledge: This shakes not the foundations of Reason, but leaves us that use of our faculties, for which they were given us.

\*\*\*\*\*

## C H A P. XIX.

### *Of Enthusiasm.*

#### § 1.

**H**E that would seriously set upon the search of Truth, ought in the first place to prepare his mind with a Love of it. For he that loves it not, will not take much pains to get it, nor be much concerned when he misses it. There is no body who does not profess himself a lover of truth, and that would not take it amiss to be thought otherwise of. And yet for all this. one may truly say, there are very few lovers of truth for Truth's sake, even amongst those who persuade themselves that they are so. How a man may know whether he be so in earnest, is worth Enquiry: And I think there is this one unerring

ring mark of it, *viz.* The not entertaining any Proposition with greater assurance than the proofs it is built upon will warrant. Whoever goes beyond this measure of Assent, it is plain, receives not Truth in the Love of it. For the evidence that any Proposition is true (except such as are self-evident) lying only in the proofs a man has of it, whatever degrees of Assent he affords it beyond the degrees of that Evidence, it is plain all that surplussage of Assurance is owing to some other affection, and not to the love of Truth. Whatsoever credit we give to any Proposition more than it receives from the principles and proofs it supports itself upon, is owing to our inclinations that way, and is so far a derogation from the Love of Truth as such : Which, as it can receive no evidence from our Passions or Interests, so it should receive no tincture from them.

§ 2. The assuming an Authority of dictating to others, and a forwardness to prescribe to their opinions, is a constant concomitant of this bias and corruption of our Judgments. For how can it be otherwise, but that he should be ready to impose on others Belief, who has already imposed on his own ?

§ 3. Upon this occasion I shall consider a third ground of Assent, which with some men has the same Authority as either *Faith* or *Reason*, I mean *Enthusiasm* ; which, laying by Reason, would set up Revelation without it. Whereby in effect it takes away both Reason and Revelation, and substitutes in the room of it, the ungrounded fancies of a man's own brain, and assumes them for a foundation both of Opinion and Conduct.

§ 4. Immediate Revelation being a much easier way for men to establish their Opinions, and regulate their Conduct, than the tedious labour of strict Reasoning, it is no wonder that some have been very apt to pretend to it, especially in such of their Actions and Opinions as they cannot account for by the ordinary methods of Knowledge, and principles of Reason. Hence we see that in all ages, men, in whom Melancholy has mixed with Devotion, or whose Conceit of themselves has raised them into an Opinion of a greater familiarity with God than is allowed others have often flattered themselves with a persuasion of an immediate Intercourse with the Deity, and frequent Communications from the divine Spirit.

§ 5. Their minds being thus prepared, whatever groundless Opinion comes to settle itself strongly upon their fancies, is an Illumination from the Spirit of God; and whatsoever odd action they find in themselves a strong Inclination to do, that Impulse is concluded to be a Call or Direction from Heaven, and must be obeyed. This I take to be properly *Enthusiasm*, which though rising from the Conceit of a warmed or overweening Brain, works, where it once gets footing, more powerfully on the persuasions and actions of men, than either Reason or Revelation, or both together; men being most forwardly obedient to the Impulses they receive from themselves. Strong Conceit, like a new Principle, carries all easily with it, when got above Common Sense, and freed from all Restraint of Reason, and check of Reflection, it is heightened into a divine Authority, in concurrence with our own Temper and Inclination.

§ 6. When men are once got into this way of immediate Revelation, of Illumination without Search, and of Certainty without Proof, it is a hard matter to get them out of it. Reason is lost upon them; they are above it: They see the *Light* infused into their Understandings, and cannot be mistaken; it is clear and visible there, like the light of bright Sunshine, shows itself, and needs no other Proof, but its own Evidence: They *feel* the hand of God moving them within, and the Impulses of the Spirit, and cannot be mistaken in what they feel.

§ 7. This is the way of talking of these men: They are sure because they are sure: And their persuasions are *right*, only because they are *strong* in them. For when what they say is stripped of the metaphor of seeing and feeling, this is all it amounts to. These men have, they say, clear light, and they see; they have an awakened sense, and they feel: This cannot, they are sure, be disputed them. But here let me ask: This *seeing* is it the perception of the Truth of the Proposition, or of this, that it is a Revelation from God? This *feeling* is it a Perception of an Inclination to do something, or of the Spirit of God moving that Inclination? These are two very different Perceptions, and must be carefully distinguished. I may perceive the Truth of a Proposition, and yet not perceive that it is an immediate Revelation from God. Nay, I may perceive I came not by it in a natural way, without perceiving that it is a Revelation from God. Because there be *Spirits*, which, without being divinely commissioned, may excite those *ideas* in me, and make their Connexion perceived. So that the Knowledge of any Proposition

coming

coming into my mind, I know not how, is not a Perception that it is from God. But however it be called Light and Seeing; I suppose it is at most but Belief and Assurance. For where a Proposition is known to be true, Revelation is needless. If therefore it be a Proposition which they are persuaded, but do not know to be true, it is not seeing but believing. What I see, I know to be so by the Evidence of the thing itself: What I believe, I take to be so upon the Testimony of another: But this Testimony I must know to be given, or else what ground have I of believing? I must see that it is God that reveals this to me, or else I see nothing. If I know not this, how great soever my Assurance is, it is groundless: Whatever Light I pretend to, it is but *Enthusiasm*.

§ 8. In all that is of divine Revelation, there is need of no other Proof, but that it is from God: For he can neither deceive nor be deceived. But how shall it be known that any Proposition in our minds is a Truth revealed to us by God? Here it is that *Enthusiasm* fails of the Evidence it pretends to. For men thus possessed boast of a Light, whereby they say they are brought into the Knowledge of this or that Truth. But if they know it to be a Truth, they must know it to be so, either by its own self-evidence or by the rational Proofs that make it out to be so. If they know it to be a Truth either of these two ways, they in vain suppose it to be a Revelation. For thus all Truths, of what kind soever, that men uninspired are enlightened with, come into their minds. If they say they know it to be true, because it is a Revelation from God, the reason is  
good:



good : But then it will be demanded, how they know it to be a Revelation from God ? If they say by the Light it brings with it, I beseech them to consider, whether this be any more, than that it is a Revelation because they strongly believe it to be true. For all the Light they speak of, is but a strong persuasion of their own minds that it is a Truth, which is a very unsafe ground to proceed on, either in our tenets or actions.

§ 9. True Light in the mind is nothing else but the *Evidence* of the Truth of any Proposition : And if it be not self-evident, all the Light it can have is from Clearness of those Proofs upon which it is received. To talk of any other Light in the Understanding, is to put ourselves in the dark, or in the power of the Prince of Darkness. For if strength of persuasion be the Light which must guide us, how shall any one distinguish between the Delusions of *Satan*, and the Inspirations of the *Holy Ghost* ?

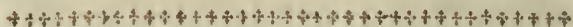
§ 10. He therefore that will not give up himself to Delusion and Error, must bring this guide of his *Light within* to the trial. God when he makes the Prophet, does not unmake the Man. He leaves his faculties in their natural state, to enable him to judge of his Inspirations, whether they be of divine Original or no. If he would have us assent to the Truth of any Proposition, he either evidences that Truth by the usual methods of natural Reason, or else makes it known to be a truth which he would have us assent to by his Authority ; and convinces us that it is from him, by some marks, which Reason cannot be mistaken in. Reason must be our last Judge and Guide in every thing. I do not mean

that we must consult Reason, and examine whether a Proposition revealed from God can be made out by natural Principles, and if it cannot, that then we may reject it: But consult it we must, and by it examine, whether it be a Revelation from God or no: And if Reason finds it to be revealed from God, Reason then declares for it, as much as for any other Truth, and makes it one of her Dictates. Every conceit that thoroughly warms our fancies must pass for an Inspiration, if there be nothing but the strength of our persuasions whereby to judge of them: If Reason must not examine their Truth by something extrinſical to the persuasions themselves, Inspirations and Delusions, Truth and Falschhood, will have the same measure, and will not be possible to be distinguished.

§ 11. Thus we see the holy men of God, who had Revelations from God, had something else besides that internal Light of Assurance in their own minds, to testify to them that it was from God. They had outward signs to convince them of the Author of those Revelations. And when they were to convince others, they had a power given them to justify the truth of their commission from Heaven; and by visible signs to assert the divine Authority of the message they were sent with. *Moses* saw the Bush burn without being consumed, and heard a voice out of it. God, by another miracle of his rod turned into a Serpent, assured him likewise of a power to testify his mission, by the same Miracle repeated before them to whom he was sent. This, and the like Instances to be found among the Prophets of old, are enough to show, that they thought not an inward seeing, or persuasion of their own minds, a sufficient Evidence

Evidence without any other proof, that it was from God, though the *Scripture* does not every where mention their demanding or having such proofs.

§ 12. I do not deny that God can, or doth sometimes enlighten mens minds in the apprehending of certain Truths, or excite them to good actions by the immediate influence and assistance of the Holy Spirit, without any extraordinary signs accompanying it. But in such cases too we have Reason and the *Scripture*, unerring rules, to know whether it be from God or no. Where the Truth embraced is consonant to the Revelation in the written Word of God; or the Action conformable to the Dictates of Right Reason, or Holy Writ, we run no risk in entertaining it as such; because, though perhaps it be not an immediate Revelation from God, extraordinarily operating on our minds, yet we are sure it is warranted by that Revelation which he has given us of Truth. Where Reason or *Scripture* is express for any Opinion or Action, we may receive it as of divine Authority: But it is not the strength of our own persuasions which can by itself give it that stamp. The bent of our own minds may favour it as much as we please; that may show it to be a fondling of our own, but will by no means prove it to be an *Offspring* of Heaven, and of divine Original.



## C H A P. XX.

*Of wrong Assent or Error.*

## § 1.

**E**RROR is a Mistake of our Judgment, giving *Assent* to that which is not true. The reasons whereof may be reduced to these *four*: First, *Want of Proofs*. Secondly, *Want of Ability to use them*. Thirdly, *Want of Will to use them*. Fourthly, *Wrong Measures of Probability*.

§ 2. First, *Want of Proofs*: by which I do not mean only the want of those Proofs which are not to be had, but also of those Proofs which are in being, or might be procured. The greatest part of mankind want the conveniences and opportunities of making Experiments and Observations themselves, or of collecting the Testimonies of others, being enslaved to the necessity of their mean Condition, whose lives are worn out only in the Provisions for living. These men are, by the Constitution of human Affairs, unavoidably given over to invincible Ignorance of those Proofs, on which others build, and which are necessary to establish those Opinions. For having much to do to get the means of living, they are not in a Condition to look after those of learned and laborious Enquiries.

§ 3. It is true, that *God* has furnished men with faculties sufficient to direct them in the way they should take, if they will but seriously employ them that way, when their ordinary vocations allow them  
leisure.

leisure. No man is so wholly taken up with the attendance on the means of living, as to have no spare time at all to think on his *Soul*, and inform himself in matters of Religion, were men as intent on this, as they are on things of lower concernment. There are none so enslaved to the necessity of life, who might not find many vacancies, that might be husbanded to this advantage of their Knowledge.

‘ Besides those already mentioned, there are others, whose largeness of fortune would plentifully enough supply books and other requisites for discovering of Truth, but they are *cooped* in close by the laws of their countries, and the strict guards of those whose interest it is to keep them ignorant, lest, knowing more, they should believe the less in them. This is generally the case of all those who live in places where care is taken to propagate Truth without Knowledge, and more are forced, at a venture, to be of the religion of their country, and must therefore swallow down opinions, as silly people do empirick’s pills, without knowing what they are made of, or how they will work.’

§ 4. Secondly, *Want of Ability* to use them. There be many who cannot carry a Train of Consequences in their heads, nor weigh exactly the preponderancy of contrary Proofs and Testimonies. These cannot discern that side on which the strongest Proofs lie; nor follow that which in itself is the most probable Opinion. It is certain, that there is a wide difference in mens Understandings, Apprehensions, and Reasonings, to a very great Latitude, so that one may, without doing Injury to mankind, affirm, that there is a greater distance between some men and others,

in this respect, than between some *men* and some *beasts*: But how this comes about is a Speculation, though of great consequence, yet not necessary to our present Purpose.

§ 5. *Thirdly For Want of Will* to use them. Some, though they have opportunities and leisure enough, and want neither parts nor learning, nor other helps, are yet never the better for them, and never come to the Knowledge of several Truths that lie within their reach; either upon the account of their hot pursuit of Pleasure, constant drudgery in Business, Laziness and Oseitancy in general, or a particular aversion for Books and Study: And some out of fear that an impartial Inquiry would not favour those Opinions, which best suit their Prejudices, Lives, Designs, Interests, &c. as many men forbear to cast up their Accounts, who have reason to fear that their Affairs are in no very good Posture.

How men, whose plentiful fortunes allow them leisure to improve their Understandings, can satisfy themselves with a lazy Ignorance, I cannot tell: But methinks they have a low Opinion of their *Souls*, who lay out all their Incomes in Provisions for the Body, and employ none of it to procure the Means and Helps of Knowledge. I will not here mention how unreasonable this is for men that ever think of a future State, and their Concernment in it, which no rational man can avoid to do sometimes: Nor shall I take notice what a shame it is to the greatest Contemners of Knowledge, to be found ignorant in things they are concerned to know. But this, at least, is worth the consideration of those who call themselves *Gentlemen*; that however they may think Credit, Re-

spect,



spect, and Authority, the concomitants of their Birth and Fortune; yet they will find all these still carried away from them by men of lower Condition, who surpass them in Knowledge. They who are blind, will always be led by those that see, or else fall into the Ditch: And he is certainly the most subjected, the most enslaved, who is so in his Understanding.

§ 6. Fourthly, *Wrong Measures of Probability*; which are,

First, *Propositions that are not in themselves certain and evident, but doubtful and false, taken for Principles*. Propositions looked on as Principles, have so great an influence upon our Opinions, that it is usually by them we judge of Truth, and what is inconsistent with them is so far from passing for *probable* with us, that it will not be allowed *possible*. The Reverence borne to these Principles is so great, that the Testimony, not only of other men, but the Evidence of our own Senses are often rejected, when they offer to vouch any thing contrary to these established Rules. The great Obstinacy that is to be found in men, firmly believing quite contrary Opinions, though many times equally absurd, in the various Religions of mankind, are as evident a proof, as they are an unavoidable consequence of this way of Reasoning from received traditional principles: So that men will disbelieve their own eyes, renounce the Evidence of their Senses, and give their own Experience the Lie, rather than admit of any thing disagreeing with these sacred Tenets.

§ 7. Secondly, *Received Hypotheses*. The difference between these and the former, is, that those who proceed by these, will admit of matter of fact,  
and

and agree with Dissenters in that; but differ in assigning of Reasons, and explaining the manner of Operation. These are not at that open defiance with their *Senses* as the former : They can endure to hearken to their Information a little more patiently ; but will by no means admit of their Reports in the Explanation of things ; nor be prevailed on by *Probabilities*, which would convince them, that things are not brought about just after the same manner that they have decreed within themselves that they are.

§ 8 Thirdly, *Predominant Passions or Inclinations*. Let never so much *Probability* hang on one side of a *covetous* man's Reasoning, and *money* on the other, it is easy to foresee which will prevail. Though men cannot always openly gainsay, or resist the force of manifest *Probabilities* that make against them, yet yield they not to the Argument. Nor but that it is the Nature of the Understanding, constantly to close with the more probable side : But yet a man hath power to suspend and restrain its Enquiries, and not permit a full and satisfactory Examination. Until that be done there will be always these *two ways left of evading the most apparent Probabilities*.

§ 9. First, That the Arguments being brought in Words, there may be Fallacy latent in them ; and the consequences being perhaps many in train, may be some of them incoherent. There are few discourses so short and clear, to which men may not, with satisfaction enough to themselves rite this doubt, and from whose conviction they may not without reproach of Disingenuity or Unreasonableness set themselves free.

§ 10. *Secondly*, Manifest *Probabilities* may be evaded upon this Suggestion, that *I know not yet all that may be said on the contrary side*; And therefore, though a man be beaten, it is not necessary he should yield, not knowing what Forces there are in reserve behind. ‘ This is a refuge against conviction, so open and so wide, that it is hard to determine, when a man is quite out of the verge of it. But yet there is some end of it; and a man having carefully enquired into all the grounds of probability, may in most cases come to acknowledge, upon the whole matter, on which side the probability rests: Wherein the proofs are so cogent and clear, as to make the fact attested highly probable; neither is there sufficient ground to suspect, that there is either fallacy of words, nor equally valid proofs, yet undiscovered, latent on the other side: Nor, *lastly*, can there be any supposition that there is as fair testimony against, as for the *matter of fact* attested. In all such cases, I think it is not in any rational man’s power to refuse his assent; in other less clear cases, I think it is in a man’s power to *suspend* his assent; and, perhaps, content himself with the proofs he has, if they favour the opinion that suits with his inclination or interest, and so stop from farther search. But that a man should afford his assent to that side, on which the less probability appears to him, seems to me utterly impracticable, and as impossible, as it is to believe the same thing probable and improbable at the same time.’

§ 11. *Fourthly*, *Authority*, or the giving up our Assent to the common received Opinions, either of our  
Friends

Friends or Party, Neighbourhood or Country. How many men have no other ground for their Tenets, than the supposed Honesty or Learning, or Number of those of the same Profession? as if honest or bookish men could not err; or Truth were to be established by the Vote of the Multitude. Yet this with most men serves the Turn. All men are liable to Errour, and most men are in many points by *Passion* or *Interest* under temptation to it. This is certain, that there is not an Opinion so absurd, which a man may not receive upon this Ground. There is no Errour to be named, which has not had its Professors. And a man shall never want crooked Paths to walk in, if he thinks that he is in the right Way, wherever he has the Footsteps of others to follow.

§ 12. But, notwithstanding the great Noise that is made in the World about Errours and Opinions, I must do Mankind that right as to say, there are not *so many men in Errours and wrong Opinions as is commonly supposed*: Not that I think they embrace the Truth, but indeed, because, concerning those Doctrines they keep such a Stir about, they have *no Thought no Opinion at all*. For if any one should a little catechise the greatest part of the *Partisans* of most of the Sects in the World, he would not find concerning those Matters, they are so zealous for, that they have any Opinions of their own: Much less would he have Reason to think, that they took them upon the Examination of Arguments, and Appearance of Probability. They are resolved to stick to a Party, that Education or Interest has engaged them in; and there, like the common Soldiers of an Army, show their Courage and Warmth, as their Leaders direct, without

without ever examining, or so much as knowing the Cause they contain for.

\*\*\*\*\*

## C H A P. XXI.

### *Of the Division of the Sciences.*

#### § 1.

ALL that can fall within the compass of Human Understanding, being either, 1<sup>st</sup>, The Nature of Things, their Relations, and their Manner of Operation; or, 2<sup>dly</sup>, That which *Man* himself ought to do as a rational and voluntary Agent, for the attainment of any End, especially *Happiness*; or, 3<sup>dly</sup>, The ways and Means whereby the Knowledge of both of these are attained and communicated: I think *Science* may be properly divided into these *three Sorts*.

§ 2. *First*, The Knowledge of Things, their Constitutions, Properties, and Operations, whether material or immaterial: This, in a little more enlarged sense of the Word, I call  $\phi\upsilon\sigma\iota\kappa\acute{\eta}$ , or *Natural Philosophy*. The end of this is bare *speculative Truth*, and whatsoever can afford the mind of man any such, falls under this Branch: Whether it be God himself, *Angels*, *Spirits*, *Bodies*, or any of their Affections, as *Number*, *Figure*, &c.

§ 3. *Secondly*,  $\pi\epsilon\alpha\kappa\tau\iota\kappa\acute{\eta}$ , the Skill of right applying our own Powers and Actions for the attainment of things good and useful. The most considerable under this head is *Ethicks*, which is the seeking out those Rules and Measures of human Actions, which lead to *Happiness*, and the Means to practise them.

them. The end of this is not bare *Speculation*; but *Right*, and a Conduct suitable thereto.

§ 4. *Thirdly*, Σημειωτική, or the *Doctrine of Signs*: the most usual being *Words*, it is aptly enough termed *Logick*: The business whereof is to consider the Nature of *Signs*, which the mind makes use of for the understanding of things, or conveying its Knowledge to others. Things are represented to the mind by *ideas*: And men's *ideas* are communicated to one another by *articulate Sounds*, or *Words*. The Consideration then of *ideas* and words, as the great Instruments of Knowledge, makes no despicable part of their Contemplation. who would take a view of human Knowledge in the whole Extent of it.

§ 5. This seems to me the *first and most general, as well as natural Division* of the Objects of our Understanding. For a man can employ his thoughts about nothing, but either the Contemplation of *Things* themselves for the Discovery of truth, or about the *Things* in his own power, which are his *Actions*, for the attainment of his own Ends; or the *Signs* the mind makes use of, both in the one and the other, and the right ordering of them, for its clearer Information. All which *Three*, viz. *Things* as they are in themselves Knowable: *Actions*, as they depend on us in order to Happiness, and the right use of *Signs*, in order to Knowledge, being *Toto Caelo* different, they seemed to me to be the three great Provinces of the *Intellectual World*, wholly, separate, and distinct one from another.

THE END.



# The C O N T E N T S.

DEDICATION,	- - -	Page 3
The INTRODUCTION,		6

\*\*\*\*\*

## BOOK II.

### Of IDEAS.

#### CHAP. I.

##### *Of Ideas in general, and their Original.*

SECT.		Page
1	IDEA is the obj <sup>t</sup> of thinking, ———	11
2	There are ideas in mens minds, ———	ib.
3	It is the opinion of some, that there are innate principles, ———	ib.
4	This opinion discussed in the first book, ———	ib.
5	Men by the use of their natural faculties may attain to all the knowledge they have, ———	12
6	Sensation and Reflection the two sources of all our ideas, ———	ib.
7	All our ideas come from one or other of these, ———	ib.
8	Observable in children, ———	13
9	The soul begins to have ideas, when it begins to perceive, ———	ib.
10	The soul thinks not always, as it is not conscious always of it, ———	14
11	That a man should always think, and not retain it the next moment, very improbable, ———	15
12	The soul does not think before it be furnished with ideas from the senses, ———	ib.
13	When a man begins to have any ideas, ———	ib.
14	The understanding is passive in receiving the materials of knowledge, ———	16

#### CHAP. II

##### *Of simple ideas.*

SECT.		
1	Uncompounded appearances, ———	16
2	Only from sensation and reflection ———	ib.
3	The mind can neither make nor destroy them, ———	17

#### CHAP. III,

##### *Of ideas of one sense.*

SECT.		
1	Our sorts of Ideas according to the different ways of entering the mind, ———	17
2	Ideas that enter only by one sense, ———	ib.

Y

CHAP.

## CHAP. IV.

*Of solidity.*

SECT.		Page
1	WE receive this idea from touch, _____	18
	Solidity distinct from space and hardness, _____	19
3	By this the extension of body is distinguished from the extension of space, _____	ib.

## CHAP. V.

<i>Of Simple Ideas by more than one sense.</i>	20
--	----

## CHAP. VI.

<i>Of Simple Ideas of Reflection.</i>	ib.
---------------------------------------	-----

## CHAP. VII.

*Of simple ideas of sensation and reflection.*

SECT.		
1, 2, 3, 4	PLEASURE and pain, _____	21, 22
5	Existence and Unity, _____	23
6	Power, _____	ib.
7	Succession, _____	ib.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Some farther considerations concerning simple ideas.*

SECT.		
1, 2	POSITIVE ideas from private causes, _____	24
3	Ideas in the mind, qualities in bodies, _____	25
4	Primary qualities, _____	ib.
5	Secondary qualities, _____	ib.
6	How primary qualities produce ideas, _____	26
7	How Secondary, _____	ib.
8	Ideas of primary qualities are resemblances; of secondary, not, _____	ib.
9	Proof that ideas of secondary qualities are not resemblances, _____	ib.
10	Secondary qualities twofold; 1st, immediately perceivable; 2dly, mediately perceivable, _____	28
11	This excursion into natural philosophy necessary, _____	29

## CHAP. IX.

*Of Perception.*

SECT.		
1	IT is the first simple idea of reflection, _____	29
2	Perception is only when the mind receives the impression, _____	ib.
3	Ideas of sensation often changed by the judgment. _____	30
4	This performed so readily, by habit, as not to be taken notice of, _____	31
	5 Perception _____	

SEC. 5	Perception puts the difference between animals and inferior beings,	Page
6	Perception the inlet of knowledge,	ib.

## CHAP. X.

### *Of retention.*

#### SECT.

1	<b>R</b> etention, the keeping those ideas the mind has received, either by	32
2	Contemplation, or,	
3	Memory,	ib.
4	Attention, repetition, pleasure and pain fix ideas,	33
5	Ideas fade in the memory,	ib.
6	The memory often active,	ib.
7	Two defects in the memory, ignorance and stupidity,	34
8	Brutes have memory,	ib.

## CHAP. XI.

### *Of discerning, and other operations of the mind.*

#### SECT.

1	<b>T</b> he difference of wit and judgment,	34
2	Clear and determinate ideas hinder confusion,	35
3	Comparing ideas,	ib.
4	Compounding,	ib.
5	Naming,	36
6	Abstraction,	ib.
7	Brutes abstract not,	ib.
8	Idiots and madmen,	37

## CHAP. XII.

### *Of complex ideas.*

#### SECT.

1	<b>M</b> ade by the mind out of simple ideas, by compounding, discerning, and abstracting,	38
2	Are either modes, substances, or relations,	39
3	Modes, simple, and mixed,	ib.
4	Substances,	ib.
5	These single or collective,	40
6	Relations,	ib.

## CHAP. XIII.

### *Of space and its simple modes.*

#### SECT.

1	<b>S</b> imple modes,	40
2	Space and Extension,	ib.
3	Immenfity,	41
4	Figure,	ib.
5	Place,	42
6	Body and Extension two distinct Ideas,	ib.

# 256 CONTENTS of Book II.

SEC. 7	Whether Space be substance or accident,	Page 42
8	Substance and accidents of little use in philosophy,	ib.
9	Ideas of space and body, and ideas of space and solidity distinct,	43

## CH A P. XIV.

### *Of Duration.*

#### SECT.

1	<b>D</b> uration got from succession,	44
2	Succession from reflection on the train of our ideas,	ib.
3	Duration applicable to things whilst we sleep,	45
4	The idea of succession not from motion. The train of ideas has a certain degree of quickness,	ib.
5	Duration set out by measures, is time,	46
6	Not necessary that time should be measured by motion,	ib.
7	Duration in itself is considered as going on in one constant, equal, uniform, course,	ib.
8	Our measure of time applicable to duration before time,	47
9	Eternity,	ib.
10	From sensation and reflection we get the ideas of duration and its measures,	ib.

## CH A P. XV.

### *Of duration and expansion considered together.*

#### SECT.

1	<b>E</b> xpansion not bounded by matter,	48
2	Nor duration by motion,	49
3	Time is to duration as place is to expansion,	ib.
4	Time and place are taken for so much of either as are set cut by the existence and motion of bodies,	ib.
5	Sometimes for so much of either as we design by measures taken from the bulk or motion of bodies,	50
6	Where and when belong to all beings.	ib.
7	Duration is as a line, expansion as a solid,	ib.

## CH A P. XVI.

### *Of Numbers.*

#### SECT.

1	<b>T</b> he simple modes of number distinct,	51
2	Names necessary to numbers,	52
3	Distinct names conduce to our well reckoning,	ib.
4	Two things requisite to reckon right,	53

## CH A P. XVII.

### *Of Infinity.*

#### SECT.

1	<b>I</b> nfinity in its original intention applied to space, duration, and number,	53
2	In what sense applied to the Supreme Being,	ib.
3	How	

SEC. 3	How we come by the idea of infinity.	Page	54
4	Why other ideas are not capable of infinity,	ib.	
5	Difference between infinity of space, and space infinite,	55	
6	Number affords us the clearest idea of infinity,	ib.	
7	Infinity, divisibility of every finite extension,	ib.	
8	What is positive, and what negative in our idea of infinity,	56	
9	Supposed positive ideas of infinity, cause of mistakes,	57	

## C H A P. XVIII.

### *Of other simple modes.*

SECT.			
1	Modes of motion,	57	
2	Of sounds,	ib.	
3	Of colours,	ib.	
4	Tastes and smells,	58	

## C H A P. XIX.

### *Of the modes of thinking.*

SECT. 2.	Thinking the action, not the essence of the soul,	59
----------	---	----

## C H A P. XX.

### *Of the modes of Pleasure and Pain.*

SECT.		
1	Pleasure and pain, simple ideas, their causes good or evil,	59
2	Our passions moved by good and evil,	60
3	These instances show how new ideas of the passions are got from sensation and reflection,	61

## C H A P. XXI.

### *Of Power.*

SECT.		
1	His idea how got,	61
2	Power active and passive,	62
3	Clear:st idea of active power, had from reflection on what passes in our own minds,	ib.
4	Will and understanding two powers or faculties,	63
5	Whence the ideas of liberty and necessity,	64
6	Supposes understanding and will,	65
7	Compulsion, Restraint, what,	66
8	Recapitulation,	ib.

## C H A P. XXII.

### *Of mixed Modes.*

SECT.		
1	Mixed modes, what,	66
2	Got either by experience,	67
3	Invention, or,	ib.
4	Explication of names,	ib.
5	The name ties the parts of the mixed modes into one idea,	68
6	The cause of making mixed modes, of frequent use in conversation,	68

SECT. 7.	Why words in one language have none answering in another, and why language change,	Page 68
8	Motion, thinking, and power have been most modified,	69
9	Causes and effects, what; several words seeming to signify action, signify but the effect,	ib.

## C H A P. XXIII.

*Of the complex ideas of Substances.*

## SECT.

1	I Deas of substances in general how made,	70
2, 3	Of the sorts of substances,	70, 71
4	Powers a great part of our complex ideas of substances,	71
5	Three sorts of ideas make the complex ones of substances,	ib.
6	The new secondary qualities of bodies would disappear, if we could discover the primary ones, of their minute parts,	72
7	Our faculties of discovery suited to our state,	ib.
8	Idea of spiritual substances as clear as of bodily substances, by comparing the two primary qualities of body in cohesion of solid parts and impulse, with two primary qualities of spirit, thinking, and mobility,	73
9	Mobility belongs to spirits,	ib.
10	The notion of spirit involves no more difficulty in it, than that of body,	74
11	No ideas in our complex one of spirits, but those got from sensation and reflection,	ib.

## C H A P. XXIV.

*Of collective ideas of Substances.*

75

## C H A P. XXV.

*Of Relation.*

## SECT.

1	R Elation what,	75
2	Relations without correlative terms not easily perceived	76
3	Relation different from things related,	ib.
4	All things capable of relation,	ib.
5	The ideas of relation clearer often, than of the subject related,	ib.

## C H A P. XXVI.

*Of Cause and effect, and other Relations.*

## SECT.

1	W Hence their ideas got.	77
2	Creation, generation, making alteration,	ib.
3	Relations of time,	78
4	Relations of extension,	ib.

C H A P.



C H A P. XXVII.  
*Of Identity and Diversity.*

SECT.		Page
1, 2.	<b>W</b> Herein identity consists.	79
3	Identity of substance,	<i>ib.</i>
4	Identity of modes,	80
5	Principium individuationis,	<i>ib.</i>
6	Identity of vegetables,	<i>ib.</i>
7	Identity of animals,	81
8	Identity of man.	<i>ib.</i>
9	Identity suited to the idea.	<i>ib.</i>
10	Same man,	<i>ib.</i>
11	Consciousness makes personal identity,	<i>ib.</i>
12	Personal identity in change of substances,	82
13	What makes the same man at the resurrection,	<i>ib.</i>
14	Self depends on consciousness,	83
15, 16, 17.	Object of reward and punishment,	<i>ib.</i>
18	Difference betwixt identity of man and person,	84
19	Apology for some suppositions that may look strange to some readers,	85
20	Difficulty from ill use of names,	<i>ib.</i>

C H A P. XXVIII.  
*Of other relations.*

SECT.		
1	<b>P</b> roportional,	86
2	Natural,	<i>ib.</i>
3	Instituted,	<i>ib.</i>
4	Moral,	<i>ib.</i>
5	Laws,	87
6	Divine law, the measure of sin and duty,	<i>ib.</i>
7	Civil law, the measure of crimes and innocence,	<i>ib.</i>
8	The law of opinion, the measure of virtue and vice,	88
9	Proof of this,	<i>ib.</i>
10	Its enforcements, commendations, and discredit,	<i>ib.</i>
11	Morality is the relation of actions to these rules,	89
12, 13.	Denominations of actions often mislead us,	90
14	Relations innumerable.	91

C H A P. XXIX.  
*Of clear, obscure, distinct, and confused Ideas.*

SECT.		
1	<b>I</b> Deas some clear and some distinct, and others obscure and confused,	91
2	Clear and obscure, explained,	<i>ib.</i>
3	Cause of obscurity,	<i>ib.</i>
4	Distinct and confused, what,	92
5	Confusion of ideas, is in reference to their names,	<i>ib.</i>
6	Confusion, 1st, occasioned by complex ideas made up of too few simple ones,	<i>ib.</i>
		7 2dly,

- SECT. 7. 2dly, Its simple ideas jumbled disorderly together, Page 92  
 8. 3dly, Or are mutable and undetermined, ——— 93  
 9 Complex ideas may be distinct in one part and confus'd in another, ——— ——— ——— *ib.*

## C H A P. XXX.

*Of real and fantastical Ideas.*

## SECT.

- 1 **R** Eal ideas are conformable to their archetypés, ——— 94  
 2 Simple ideas all real, ——— ——— *ib.*  
 3 Complex ideas are voluntary combinations, ——— 95  
 4 Mixed modes made of constant ideas are real, ——— *ib.*  
 5 Ideas of substances are real, when they agree with the existence of things. ——— ——— *ib.*

## C H A P. XXXI.

*Of adequate and inadequate ideas.*

## SECT.

- 1 **A** Dequate ideas are such as perfectly represent their archetypes, ——— ——— 96  
 2 Simple ideas all adequate, ——— ——— *ib.*  
 3 Modes are all adequate, ——— ——— *ib.*  
 4 Ideas of substance as referred to real essences, not adequate, ——— ——— 97  
 5 Ideas of substances, as collections of their qualities, are all inadequate, ——— ——— *ib.*

## C H A P. XXXII.

*Of true and false Ideas.*

## SECT.

- 1 **T** RUTH and falsehood properly belongs to propositions, 98  
 2 Ideas referred to any thing extraneous, may be true or false, ——— ——— 99  
 3 When our ideas are supposed conformable to those of other men, they may be any of them false, ——— *ib.*  
 4 When our ideas are referred to the real existence of things none can be termed False, but our complex ideas of substances, ——— ——— 100  
 5 Simple ideas in this sense, not false, and why, ——— *ib.*  
 6 Modes not false, ——— ——— 101  
 7 Ideas of substances when false, ——— ——— *ib.*  
 8 Ideas more properly to be called right or wrong, ——— *ib.*

## C H A P. XXXIII.

*Of the association of Ideas.*

## SECT.

- 1 **S** OMEthing unreasonable in most men, ——— ——— 102  
 2 Not wholly from education, ——— ——— *ib.*  
 3 From a wrong connection of ideas, ——— ——— 103  
 4 A great cause of error, ——— ——— 104  
 5 Its influence on intellectual habits, ——— ——— *ib.*  
 6 Observable in different sects, ——— ——— 105  
 7 Conclusion, ——— ——— ——— 106

\*\*\*\*\*

# BOOK III.

## Of WORDS.

### CHAP. I.

#### *Of words or language in general.*

SECT.		Page
1	<b>M</b> An fitted to form articulate sounds, — — —	107
2	To make them signs of ideas, — — —	ib.
3	To make general signs, — — —	ib.
4	Words ultimately derived from such as signify sensible ideas	108
5	Distribution, — — —	ib.

### CHAP. II.

#### *Of the signification of Words.*

SECT.		Page
1	<b>W</b> ords are sensible signs necessary for communication	109
2, 3	Words are the sensible signs of his ideas who use them, — — —	110
4	Words often referred secretly to the ideas in other mens minds, — — —	ib.
5	To the reality of things, — — —	ib.
6	Words by use, readily excite ideas, — — —	ib.
7	Words often used without signification, — — —	111
8	Their signification perfectly arbitrary, — — —	ib.

### CHAP. III.

#### *Of General Terms.*

SECT.		Page
1	<b>T</b> he greatest part of words general, — — —	112
2	It is impossible for every particular thing to have a name, — — —	ib.
3, 4	And useless, — — —	ib.
5, 6	How general words are made, — — —	113
7	Genus and species nothing but abstract ideas, with names annexed, — — —	ib.
8	Why genus is ordinarily made use of in definitions,	114
9	Abstract ideas are the essences of genera and species,	ib.
10	They are the workmanship of the understanding, but have their foundation in the similitude of things,	115
11	Real essence, — — —	ib.
12	Nominal essence, — — —	ib.
13	Constant connection between the name and nominal essence, — — —	116
14	Supposition that species are distinguished by their real essences, useless, — — —	ib.
15	Real and nominal essence, the same in simple ideas and modes, different in substances, — — —	117
16	Essences ingenerable and incorruptible, — — —	ib.
17	Immutability of essences proves them to be abstract ideas,	ib.

### CHAP.

## C H A P. IV.

*Of the names of simple Ideas.*

## SECT.

- 1 **N**AMES of simple ideas, modes, and substances, have each something peculiar, \_\_\_\_\_ 113
- 2 The names of simple ideas and substances intimate real existence, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 3 Names of simple ideas and modes signify always both real and nominal essence, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 4 Names of simple ideas undefinable, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 5 What a definition is, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 6 Names of simple ideas, why undefinable, \_\_\_\_\_ 119
- 7 Instances. Motion, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 8 Light, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 9 Simple ideas, why undefinable further explained, \_\_\_\_\_ 120
- 10 Contrary showed in complex ideas, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 11 Simple ideas have few ascents in *linea prædamentali*, *ib.*
- 12 Names of simple ideas stated for ideas not at all arbitrary, 121

## C H A P. V.

*Of the names of mixed modes and relations.*

## SECT.

- 1 **T**HEY stand for abstract ideas, \_\_\_\_\_ 121
- 2 The ideas they stand for are made by the understanding, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 3 They are made arbitrarily and without patterns, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 4 How this is done, \_\_\_\_\_ 122
- 5 But still sufficient to the end of language, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 6 In mixed modes it is the name that ties the combination together, and makes it a species, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 7 Why the names are usually got before their ideas, \_\_\_\_\_ 123
- 8 What has been said of mixed modes applicable to relations, \_\_\_\_\_ 124

## C H A P. VI.

*Of the names of Substances.*

## SECT.

- 1 **T**HE common names of substances stand for sorts, 124
- 2 The essence of each sort the abstract idea, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 3 Nothing essential to individuals, \_\_\_\_\_ 125
- 4 The nominal essence, bounds the species, \_\_\_\_\_ 126
- 5 Not the real essence, which we know not, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 6 But not so arbitrary as mixed modes, \_\_\_\_\_ 127
- 7 The mind in making complex ideas of substances, only follows nature, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 8 Very imperfect, \_\_\_\_\_ 128
- 9 The more general our ideas are, the more partial and incomplete they are. \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 10 Genera and species, \_\_\_\_\_ 129
- 11 This accommodated by the end of speech, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 12 Substances alone have proper names, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*

C H A P.

# CONTENTS of Book III. 263

## CH A P. VII.

### *Of Particles.*

SECT.		Page
1	<b>P</b> Articles connect parts of proper and whole sentences together, _____	130
2	In the right use of particles consists a good stile, _____	<i>ib.</i>
3	They show what relation the mind gives to its own thoughts, _____	<i>ib.</i>

## CH A P. VIII.

### *Of abstract and concrete Terms.*

SECT.		
1	<b>A</b> bstract terms not predicated of one another, and why	132
2	They show the difference of our ideas, _____	<i>ib.</i>

## CH A P. IX.

### *Of the imperfection of Words.*

SECT.		
1	<b>W</b> ords are used for recording and communicating our thoughts, _____	133
2	Communication by words, civil or philosophical, _____	<i>ib.</i>
3	The imperfection of words is the doubtfulness of their signification, _____	134
4	The names of mixed modes, 1st, doubtful because the ideas they stand for are so complex, _____	<i>ib.</i>
5	2dly, Because they have no standards, _____	<i>ib.</i>
6	The way of learning these names, contributes also to their doubtfulness, _____	135
7	3dly, Because referred to a standard which cannot be known, _____	<i>ib.</i>
8	Referred to coexisting qualities which are known but imperfectly, _____	<i>ib.</i>
9	4tely, Because the signification of the word and the real essence of the thing are not the same, _____	138
10	The names of simple ideas left doubtful, _____	<i>ib.</i>
11	And next to them simple modes, _____	<i>ib.</i>
12	The most doubtful are names of very compounded mixed modes, _____	<i>ib.</i>
13	And of substances, _____	<i>ib.</i>

## CH A P. X.

### *Of the Abuse of Words.*

SECT.		
1	<b>A</b> Buse of words, _____	137
2	1st, Words without any, or without clear ideas, _____	<i>ib.</i>
3	2dly, Inconstancy in the use of words, _____	138
4	3dly, Affecting obscurity, _____	<i>ib.</i>
5	4thly, Taking words for things, _____	<i>ib.</i>
6	5thly, Setting them in the place of things. which they can by no means signify, _____	139
7	6thly, A supposition that words have a certain and evident signification, _____	141
		8 7thly,

# 264 CONTENTS of Book IV.

SEC. 8	7thly, Figurative speech, ————	Page 141
9	1st, The ends of language, 1st, to convey our ideas, ————	142
10	2dly, To do it with quickness, ————	ib.
11	3dly, The 2nd to convey the knowledge of things, ————	ib.
12	How mens words fail in all these, ————	143
13	He that uses words without any meaning, is an enemy to truth, ————	ib.
14, 15.	The greatest part of disputes merely verbal, ————	144

## CHAP. XI.

### *Of the remedies of the foregoing Imperfections and abuses.*

#### SECT.

1	1st, <b>T</b> O use no word without an idea, ————	144
2	2dly, To have distinct ideas annexed to them, ————	ib.
3	3dly, Propriety, ————	145
4	4thly, Making known their meaning, ————	ib.
5	Names of simple ideas by synonymous terms, or showing, ————	ib.
6	Names of mixed modes by definition, ————	ib.
7	Names of substances by showing and defining, ————	ib.
8	Words standing for things best explained by little draughts and prints made of them, ————	146
9	5thly, Consancy in their signification, ————	147



## BOOK IV.

### *Of KNOWLEDGE and OPINION.*

#### CHAP. I.

### *Of Knowledge in general.*

#### SECT.

1	<b>K</b> nowledge is the perception of the agreement or disagreement of our ideas, which is fourfold, ————	148
2	1st Identity and diversity, ————	ib.
3	2dly, Relation, ————	149
4	3dly, Coexistence, ————	ib.
5	4thly, Actual and real existence, ————	ib.
6	Knowledge actual and habitual, ————	150
7	Habitual knowledge twofold, ————	ib.

#### CHAP. II.

### *Of the Degrees of our Knowledge.*

#### SECT.

1	<b>D</b> ifferent clearness of our knowledge, ————	151
2	Intuitive, ————	152
3	Demonstrative, ————	ib.
4	Not so clear nor without doubt, ————	153
5	Each step must have intuitive evidence, ————	ib.
6	Demonstration not limited to quantity, ————	154
	1	7, 8 Why



SECT.		Page
7, 8.	Why it has been so thought, ——— ———	155
9.	Sensitive knowledge, ——— ———	156
10.	Knowledge not always clear where the ideas are so, —	ib.

C H A P. III

*Of the extent of Human Knowledge.*

SECT.		Page
1	1st, <b>N</b> O farther than we have ideas, —	157
2	2dly, No farther than we can perceive their agreement or disagreement, ——— ———	ib.
3	3dly, Intuitive knowledge extends itself not to all the relations of all our ideas, ——— ———	158
4	4thly, Nor demonstrative knowledge, ——— ———	ib.
5	5thly, Sensitive knowledge narrower than either, ———	ib.
6	It follows, that the extent of our knowledge is narrower than our ideas, ——— ———	ib.
7	We have the ideas of matter and thinking, but possibly shall never be able to know, whether any more material being thinks or not, ——— ———	ib.
8	All the ends of morality and religion well enough secured, without a demonstration of the soul's immateriality, ———	159
9	How far our knowledge reaches, 1st, as to identity, —	ib.
10	2dly, As to coexistence, ——— ———	160
11	Because all connection between any secondary and primary qualities, is undiscoverable, ——— ———	161
12	Our knowledge of coexistence no farther than our experience, ——— ———	ib.
13	Of repugnancy to coexist larger, ——— ———	162
14	Of the coexistence of powers a very little way, ———	ib.
15	3dly, Of other relations, it is not easy to say how far, ———	ib.
16	Morality capable of demonstration, ——— ———	163
17	Two things have made moral ideas thought incapable of demonstration; their complexedness, and want of sensible representations, ——— ———	164
18	Remedies of these difficulties, ——— ———	165
19	4thly, Actual real existence, ——— ———	ib.
20	Causes of our ignorance, ——— ———	ib.
21	1st, Want of ideas, either such as we have no conception of, or, such as, ——— ———	ib.
22	We are not capable of either, ——— ———	166
23	Because they are too remote, or, ——— ———	ib.
24	Because of their minuteness, ——— ———	167
25	Hence no science of bodies, ——— ———	168
26	Much less of spirits, ——— ———	ib.
27	2dly, Want of a discoverable connection between ideas we have, ——— ———	169
28	Instances, ——— ———	ib.
29	3dly, Want of tracing our ideas, ——— ———	170
30	Extent in respect of universality, ——— ———	171

## CHAP. IV.

*Of the Reality of our Knowledge.*

SECT.		Page
1	<b>O</b> bjection, Knowledge placed in ideas may be all bare vision, _____	172
2, 3	Answer. Not so when ideas agree with things, _____	172, 173
4	As, 1st, all simple ideas do, _____	173
5	2dly, All complex ideas, substances excepted, _____	ib.
6, 7	Hence the reality of mathematical and moral knowledge, _____	174
8	Misnaming does not disturb the certainty of the knowledge, _____	175
9	3dly, Ideas of substances have their archetypes without us, and so far as they agree with these, so far our knowledge concerning them is real, _____	ib. and 176

## CHAP. V

*Of Truth in General.*

SECT.		
1	<b>W</b> hat truth is, _____	176
2	A right joining or separating of signs, <i>i. e.</i> ideas or words, _____	177
3	Which make mental or verbal propositions, _____	ib.
4	When mental propositions contain verbal truth, and when real _____	178
5	Falsehood is the joining of names otherwise than their ideas do agree, _____	ib.
6	Moral and metaphysical truth, _____	ib.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of universal Propositions, their Truth and Certainty.*

SECT.		
1	<b>T</b> heating of words necessary to knowledge, _____	179
2	Certainty twofold, of truth and knowledge, _____	ib.
3	No proposition can be known to be true, where the existence of each species mentioned is not known, _____	ib.
4	This more particularly concern substances, _____	180
5	The truth of few universal propositions concerning substances, is to be known, _____	ib.
6	Instance in gold, _____	181
7	Of all the secondary qualities of substances, there cannot be two named, whose necessary coexistence can be certainly known, unless in these of the same sense, _____	ib.
8	Judgment may reach further, but that is not knowledge, _____	182
9	Wherein lies the general certainty of propositions. _____	ib.

## CHAP. VII.

*Of Maxims.*

SECT.		
1	<b>N</b> ot innate, _____	183
2	Self-evidence not peculiar to maxims, _____	184
		3 1st,

## SECT.

- 3 1st, As, identity and diversity to all propositions are equally self-evident, \_\_\_\_\_ 184
- 4 2dly, In coexistence we have few self-evident propositions, *ib.*
- 5 3dly, In other relations we may have, \_\_\_\_\_ 185
- 6 4thly, Concerning real existence we have none, — *ib.*
- 7 These axioms do not much influence our other knowledge, *ib.*
- 8 1st, Because they are not the truth we first knew, \_\_\_\_\_ 186
- 9 Abstract ideas useful for the enlargement of knowledge, and convenience of communication, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 10 2dly, Because on them the other parts of knowledge do not depend, \_\_\_\_\_ 187
- 11 These maxims are of use in disputes to stop the mouths of wranglers, \_\_\_\_\_ 188
- 12 These maxims are used by the teachers of mathematicks, as formed rules and sayings, ready to be applied to all particular cases, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 13 These maxims do not prove the existence of things without us, \_\_\_\_\_ 189
- 14 Little use of these maxims in proofs where we have clear and distinct ideas, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 15 Of dangerous use where our ideas are confused, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*

## C H A P. VIII.

### *Of trifling propositions.*

## SECT.

- 1 **S**ome propositions bring no increase to our knowledge, 190
- 2 **A**s, 1st, All purely identical propositions, — *ib.*
- 3 2dly, When a part of any complex idea is predicated, of the name of the whole, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 4 As part of the definition of the thing defined, — 191
- 5 General propositions concerning substances, are often trifling, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 6 3dly, Using words variously is trifling with them, 192
- 7 Marks of verbal propositions, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 8 1st, Predicated in abstract, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 9 2dly, A part of the definition predicated of any term, *ib.*

## C H A P. IX.

### *Of our knowledge of existence.*

## SECT.

- 1 **G**eneral propositions concern not existence, — 193
- 2 **A** threefold knowledge of existence, \_\_\_\_\_ *ib.*
- 3 Our knowledge of our own existence is intuitive. — *ib.*

## C H A P. X.

### *Of our Knowledge of the Existence of a God.*

## SECT.

- 1 **W**E are capable of knowing certainly that there is a God, \_\_\_\_\_ 194
- 2 Man knows that he himself exists, \_\_\_\_\_ 195

SECT.		Page
3	He knows also, that bare nothing cannot produce any real being; therefore, something eternal, ————	195
4	That eternal Being must be most powerful, ————	ib.
5	And most knowing, ————	ib.
6	And, therefore, God, ————	196
7	Two sorts of beings, cogitative and incogitative, ————	ib.
8	Incogitative matter cannot produce a cogitative being; therefore, the first eternal Being cannot be matter. ————	197
9	Therefore, there has been an eternal Wisdom, ————	198
10	This discovery does sufficiently lead us to the knowledge of the attributes of God, ————	ib.

## C H A P. XI.

*Of the knowledge of the existence of other things.*

SECT.		
1	It is to be had only by sensation, ————	199
2	This, though not so certain as demonstration, yet may be called Knowledge, which proves the existence of things without us, ————	ib.
3	1st, Because we have not them but by the inlet of the senses, ————	200
4	2dly, Because sometimes we find we cannot avoid the having these ideas produced in our minds, ————	ib.
5	3dly, Pleasure or pain, which accompany actual sensation, accompanies not the returning of these ideas, without the external objects, ————	201
6	4thly, Our senses assist one another's testimony of the existence of outward things, ————	ib.
7	This certainty is as great as our condition needs, ————	ib.
8	But reaches no further than actual sensation, ————	202
9	Past existence is known by memory, ————	ib.
10	The existence of spirits not knowable, ————	ib.
11	Particular propositions concerning existences knowable, ————	203
12	Universal propositions concerning general ideas may be certain, ————	ib.
13	Propositions concerning abstract ideas, eternal verities, ————	204

## C H A P. XII.

*Of the improvement of our Knowledge.*

SECT.		
1	Knowledge is not from maxims, ————	205
2	The occasion of that opinion, ————	ib.
3	But to compare clear and compleat ideas under steady names	206
4	Dangerous to rely on precarious principles or prejudices. A mark to know them by, ————	206, 207
5	An equal indifferency for all truth, and an impartial examination of our principles, the best means of getting rid of prejudices, ————	207
6	The true method of advancing knowledge is, by considering our general ideas, ————	208
	7 But	

# CONTENTS of Book IV. 269

SECT.		Page.
7	But knowledge of bodies is to be improved only by experience, _____	209
8	This may procure us convenience, but not science, _____	210
9	We are fitted for moral knowledge and natural improvements, _____	ib.
10	The ways to enlarge our knowledge are clear and distinct ideas, with settled names, and the art of finding out intermediate ideas, _____	211
11	Mathematics an instance of it, _____	ib.

## C H A P. XIII.

### *Some further Considerations concerning Knowledge.*

SECT.		Page.
1	Our knowledge partly necessary, partly voluntary, _____	212
2	Instance in numbers and natural religion, _____	213

## C H A P. XIV.

### *Of Judgment.*

SECT.		Page.
1	Our knowledge being short, we want something else, _____	214
2	What use to be made of this twilight state, _____	ib.
3	Judgment supplies the want of knowledge, _____	ib.
4	The presuming things to be so, without perceiving it, _____	215

## C H A P. XV.

### *Of Probability.*

SECT.		Page.
1	Probability is the appearance of agreement upon fallible proofs, _____	215
2	It is to supply the want of knowledge, _____	ib.
3	Being that which makes us presume things to be true, before we know them to be so, _____	216
4	The grounds of probability are two; conformity with our own experience, or the testimony of others, _____	ib.
5	All the arguments, pro and con, ought to be examined before we come to a judgment, _____	ib.

## C H A P. XVI.

### *Of the Degrees of Assent.*

SECT.		Page.
1	Our assent ought to be regulated by the grounds of probability, _____	217
2	In many cases, we must content ourselves with the remembrance that we once saw ground for such a degree of assent, _____	ib.
3	The ill consequence of this, if our former judgments were not rightly made, _____	218
4	Probability is either of matter of fact, or speculation, _____	ib.
	5. 1st, The	

# 270 CONTENTS of Book IV.

SECT.		Page
5	1st, The concurrent experience of all other men with our own, produces assurance approaching to knowledge,	213
6	2dly, Unequivocal testimony and experience, for the most part produces confidence,	219
7	3dly, Fair testimony, and the nature of the thing indifferent, produces also confident belief,	220
8	Experience and testimony clashing, infinitely vary the degrees of probability,	ib.
9	Traditional testimonies, the farther removed, the less their proof,	221
10	No probability can rise above its first original	ib.
11	In things which sense cannot discover, analogy is the great rule of probability; such as	222
12	1st, The existence of finite immaterial beings, or material beings, which, for their minuteness or remoteness cannot be taken notice of by our senses,	ib.
13	2dly, the manner of operation in most parts of the works of nature,	ib.
14	One case where contrary experience lessens not the testimony,	223
15	The bare testimony of revelation is the highest certainty,	ib.

## CHAP. XVII.

### *Of Reason.*

SECT.		
1	Various significations of the word Reason,	224
2	Wherein reasoning consists,	ib.
3	Its four parts,	225
4	Syllogism not the greatest instrument of reason,	ib.
5, 6	Because, 1st, syllogism serves our reason in one only of the forementioned parts,	226
7	2dly, Syllogisms are liable to fallacies,	227
8	Helps little in demonstration, less in probability,	ib.
9	Fails us in making new discoveries,	ib.
10	We reason about particulars,	228
11	Reason fails us in several instances,	ib.
12	The principal act of ratiocination is the finding the agreement of two ideas, by the intervention of a third,	229
13	Four sorts of arguments; 1st, <i>ad veredundiam</i> ,	ib.
14	2dly, <i>ad ignorantiam</i> ,	ib.
15	3dly, <i>ad hominem</i> ,	230
16	4thly, <i>ad judicium</i> ,	ib.
17	Above, contrary, and according to reason,	ib.
18	Reason and faith not opposite,	231

## CHAP. XVIII.

### *Of Faith and Reason, and their distinct provinces.*

SECT.		
1	Reason and faith how contradistinguished,	231
2	No new simple idea can be conveyed by traditional revelation,	232
		3 The



# CONTENTS of Book IV. 271

SECT.		Page
3	The same truths may be discovered by revelation, which are discoverable to us by reason, but not with the same certainty, _____	232
4	Revelation cannot be admitted against the clear evidence of reason, _____	233
5	3dly, Things above reason, _____	234
6	Or, not contrary to reason if revealed, are matter of faith; only an evident revelation ought to determine our assent, even against probability, _____	235
7	In matters where reason can afford knowledge, that is to be hearkened to, _____	ib.

## C H A P. XIX.

### *Of Enthusiasm.*

SECT.		Page
1	<b>L</b> ove of truth necessary, _____	236
2	A forwardness to dictate, from whence, _____	237
3	Force of enthusiasm, _____	ib.
4	Rise of enthusiasm, _____	238
5	Enthusiasm described, _____	ib.
6	Enthusiasm mistaken for seeing or feeling, _____	239
7	Enthusiasm, how to be discovered, _____	ib.
8	Enthusiasm fails of evidence that the proposition is from God, _____	240
9	Light in the mind, what, _____	241
10	Revelation must be judged by reason, _____	ib.
11, 12	Belief no proof of revelation, _____	242, 243

## C H A P. XX.

### *Of Wrong Assent or Errour.*

SECT.		Page
1	<b>C</b> auses of error, _____	244
2	1st, Want of proofs, _____	ib.
3	People hindered from enquiry, _____	ib.
4	2dly, Want of skill to use them, _____	245
5	3dly, Want of will to use them, _____	246
6	4thly, Wrong measures of probability: As, 1st, doubtful propositions taken for principles, _____	247
7	2dly, Received hypothesis, _____	ib.
8	3dly, Predominant passions, _____	248
9	The means of evading probabilities; 1st, supposed fallacy, _____	ib.
10	2dly Supposed arguments for the contrary, _____	249
11	4thly, Authority, _____	ib.
12	Men not in so many errors as is imagined, _____	250

## C H A P. XXI.

### *Of the Division of the Sciences.*

SECT.		Page
1	<b>T</b> hree sorts, _____	251
2	1st, Φυσική, _____	ib.
3	2dly, Πρακτική, _____	ib.
4	3dly, Σημειωτική, _____	252
5	This is the first division of the object of knowledge, _____	ib.





